

# GUIDELINE

**G1139**

**THE TECHNICAL SPECIFICATION OF VDES**

**Edition 4.0**

**December 2020**



# DOCUMENT HISTORY

---

Revisions to this IALA document are to be noted in the table prior to the issue of a revised document.

| Date          | Details   | Requirement for Revision |
|---------------|---|--------------------------|
| December 2017 | 1 <sup>st</sup> issue, Council 65   |                          |
| December 2018 | All chapters updated to reflect technical developments related to VDES. Replaced Annex C (link layer) with new Link Layer proposed in China 2018 Intersessional. Council 68 |                          |
| June 2019     | Updates from eNAV 23. Council 69  |                          |
| December 2020 | Updates from Intersessional January 2020 and eNAV 26 in all annexes to reflect the preparations for submission to WP5B.   |                          |

# CONTENTS

|                |   |           |
|----------------|---|-----------|
| <b>1</b>       | <b>Introduction .....</b>                                     | <b>16</b> |
| 1.1            | Purpose of the document .....                                 | 16        |
| 1.2            | Background .....  | 16        |
| 1.3            | Document Structure .....                                      | 16        |
| <b>2</b>       | <b>Operational Characteristics .....</b>                      | <b>17</b> |
| 2.1            | General Description of VDES .....                             | 17        |
| <b>3</b>       | <b>Key Technical Characteristics .....</b>                    | <b>18</b> |
|                | Satellite .....   | 18        |
| 3.1            | Downlink .....  | 18        |
| 3.2            | VDE-TER May operate in either duplex or simplex mode .....    | 18        |
| 3.3            | VDES channel usage in accordance with ITU RR Appendix 18..... | 18        |
| 3.4            | Station Identification .....                                  | 19        |
| 3.5            | Presentation interface protocol .....                         | 19        |
| 3.6            | VDES communications Prioritization .....                      | 20        |
| <b>4</b>       | <b>Definitions / Acronyms and References .....</b>            | <b>20</b> |
| 4.1            | Definitions.....  | 20        |
| 4.2            | Acronyms .....  | 20        |
| 4.3            | References .....  | 23        |
| <b>ANNEX A</b> | <b>Common Technical Elements of VDES .....</b>                | <b>24</b> |
| <b>A 1.</b>    | <b>Protocol Layer .....</b>                                   | <b>24</b> |
| A 1.1.         | Protocol layer overview .....                                 | 24        |
| A 1.2.         | Physical layer .....  | 24        |
| A 1.2.1.       | Transmission accuracy figures.....                            | 24        |
| A 1.2.2.       | Frame Structure .....   | 24        |
| A 1.2.3.       | Burst transmission structure .....                            | 25        |
| A 1.2.4.       | Forward Error Correction .....                                | 28        |
| A 1.2.5.       | CRC 34 .....  |           |
| A 1.2.6.       | Bit scrambling.....   | 34        |
| A 1.2.7.       | Modulation Coding Schemes.....                                | 35        |
| A 1.2.8.       | Channel Quality Indicator.....                                | 41        |
| A 1.2.9.       | Bit mapping .....   | 41        |
| A 1.2.10.      | Antenna gain for VDES ship stations .....                     | 44        |
| A 1.2.11.      | Noise and interference level .....                            | 44        |
| A 1.2.12.      | Transmitter requirements for VDES .....                       | 44        |
| A 1.3.         | Link layer.....   | 46        |
| A 1.3.1.       | TDMA Synchronization .....                                    | 46        |
| A 1.3.2.       | Coordinated universal time direct.....                        | 46        |



# CONTENTS

|                |   |           |
|----------------|---|-----------|
| A 1.3.3.       | Coordinated universal time indirect.....  | 46        |
| <b>ANNEX B</b> | <b>Technical characteristics of the Application Specific Message (ASM) channels for the VDES in the VHF maritime mobile band.....</b> | <b>47</b> |
| <b>B 1.</b>    | <b>Introduction .....</b>   | <b>47</b> |
| B 1.1.         | OSI layers .....  | 47        |
| B 1.1.1.       | Physical layer .....  | 47        |
| B 1.1.2.       | Link layer .....  | 47        |
| B 1.1.3.       | Network layer .....   | 47        |
| B 1.1.4.       | Transport layer .....   | 47        |
| <b>B 2.</b>    | <b>Physical layer.....</b>  | <b>48</b> |
| B 2.1.         | Parameters.....   | 48        |
| B 2.1.1.       | General.....  | 48        |
| B 2.1.2.       | Transmission media.....   | 48        |
| B 2.1.3.       | Multi-channel operation .....   | 48        |
| B 2.2.         | Transceiver characteristics .....   | 48        |
| B 2.3.         | Modulation scheme .....   | 50        |
| B 2.4.         | Data transmission bit rate .....  | 50        |
| B 2.5.         | Frame structure .....   | 50        |
| B 2.6.         | Signal information.....   | 50        |
| B 2.7.         | Forward error correction and Bit Scrambling.....  | 50        |
| B 2.8.         | Transmitter transient response .....  | 50        |
| B 2.9.         | Transmitter power .....   | 50        |
| <b>B 3.</b>    | <b>Link layer.....</b>  | <b>51</b> |
| B 3.1.         | Sub-layer 1 – medium access control .....   | 51        |
| B 3.2.         | TDMA synchronization.....   | 51        |
| B 3.3.         | Time division.....  | 51        |
| B 3.3.1.       | Slot phase and frame synchronization .....  | 51        |
| B 3.3.2.       | Slot phase synchronization.....   | 51        |
| B 3.3.3.       | Frame synchronization .....   | 51        |
| B 3.3.4.       | Slot identification .....   | 51        |
| B 3.3.5.       | Slot access .....   | 51        |
| B 3.3.6.       | Slot state .....  | 51        |
| B 3.4.         | Sub layer 2 – data link service.....  | 52        |
| B 3.4.1.       | Data link activation and release .....  | 52        |
| B 3.4.2.       | Data transfer .....   | 52        |
| B 3.4.3.       | Packet format.....  | 52        |
| B 3.4.4.       | Error detection and control.....  | 53        |
| B 3.4.5.       | Forward Error correction.....   | 53        |
| B 3.5.         | Sub layer 3 – link management entity .....  | 53        |

# CONTENTS

|                |  |           |
|----------------|--|-----------|
| B 3.5.1.       | Access to the data link.....   | 53        |
| B 3.5.2.       | Cooperation on the data link.....  | 53        |
| B 3.5.3.       | Candidate slots .....  | 53        |
| B 3.5.4.       | Modes of operation.....  | 55        |
| B 3.5.5.       | Autonomous.....  | 55        |
| B 3.5.6.       | Assigned .....   | 55        |
| B 3.5.7.       | Channel access schemes .....   | 55        |
| B 3.5.8.       | Message structure.....   | 57        |
| <b>B 4.</b>    | <b>Network layer.....</b>  | <b>59</b> |
| B 4.1.         | Multi-channel operations .....   | 59        |
| B 4.2.         | Management of priority assignment for messages.....                                  | 59        |
| B 4.3.         | Data link congestion resolution .....  | 60        |
| B 4.3.1.       | Mandatory quiet times.....   | 60        |
| <b>B 5.</b>    | <b>Transport layer .....</b>   | <b>60</b> |
| B 5.1.         | Definition of transmission packet.....   | 60        |
| B 5.2.         | ASM identifier .....   | 60        |
| B 5.3.         | Transmission packets.....  | 61        |
| B 5.3.1.       | Addressed Messages .....   | 61        |
| B 5.3.2.       | Broadcast messages .....   | 61        |
| B 5.3.3.       | Conversion to presentation interface messages .....                                  | 61        |
| B 5.3.4.       | Conversion of data into transmission packets.....                                    | 61        |
| B 5.4.         | MITDMA access .....  | 61        |
| B 5.4.1.       | MITDMA access example .....  | 61        |
| <b>B 6.</b>    | <b>Packet structure .....</b>  | <b>62</b> |
| B 6.1.         | slot transmission structure .....  | 62        |
| B 6.2.         | Message summary .....  | 63        |
| B 6.3.         | Message 0: broadcast AIS ASM message.....  | 63        |
| B 6.4.         | Message 1: Scheduled broadcast message .....   | 64        |
| B 6.5.         | Message 2: Broadcast message .....   | 65        |
| B 6.6.         | Message 3: Scheduled addressed message.....  | 65        |
| B 6.7.         | Message 4: Addressed message .....   | 66        |
| B 6.8.         | Message 5: Acknowledgment message.....   | 66        |
| B 6.9.         | Message 6: Geographical multicast message .....                                      | 67        |
| <b>B 7.</b>    | <b>Example of generation symbol of VDES burst .....</b>                              | <b>68</b> |
| <b>ANNEX C</b> | <b>Technical characteristics of VDE-terrestrial in the maritime mobile band.....</b> | <b>70</b> |
| <b>C 1.</b>    | <b>Introduction .....</b>  | <b>70</b> |
| <b>C 2.</b>    | <b>OSI layer.....</b>  | <b>70</b> |
| <b>C 3.</b>    | <b>Physical layer.....</b>   | <b>70</b> |

# CONTENTS

|             |  |           |
|-------------|--|-----------|
| C 3.1.      | Range .....  | 70        |
| C 3.2.      | Transmitter Parameter settings.....                | 70        |
| C 3.3.      | Antenna .....                                      | 70        |
| C 3.4.      | Modulation .....                                   | 70        |
| C 3.4.1.    | Waveforms .....                                    | 70        |
| C 3.4.2.    | Bit Mapping .....                                  | 70        |
| C 3.5.      | Sensitivity and Interference.....                  | 70        |
| C 3.6.      | Symbol timing accuracy .....                       | 71        |
| C 3.7.      | Transmitter timing jitter .....                    | 71        |
| C 3.8.      | Slot transmission accuracy at the output .....     | 71        |
| C 3.9.      | Frame structure .....                              | 71        |
| <b>C 4.</b> | <b>Link layer.....</b>                             | <b>71</b> |
| C 4.1.      | TDMA hierarchy .....                               | 71        |
| C 4.1.1.    | Hexslot.....                                       | 71        |
| C 4.1.2.    | TDMA channel.....                                  | 71        |
| C 4.1.3.    | TDMA frame.....                                    | 71        |
| C 4.1.4.    | TDMA slot.....                                     | 72        |
| C 4.2.      | Link Layer Definitions.....                        | 72        |
| C 4.2.1.    | Logical channel .....                              | 72        |
| C 4.2.2.    | Physical Channel.....                              | 72        |
| C 4.2.3.    | VDE Slotmap.....                                   | 72        |
| C 4.2.4.    | Bulletin board.....                                | 72        |
| C 4.2.5.    | Short data message.....                            | 72        |
| C 4.2.6.    | Data session .....                                 | 72        |
| C 4.2.7.    | Multisession data transfer.....                    | 72        |
| C 4.2.8.    | Data fragment .....                                | 72        |
| C 4.3.      | Control station service area.....                  | 72        |
| C 4.4.      | Resource Management.....                           | 72        |
| C 4.5.      | Endianness .....                                   | 73        |
| C 4.6.      | Data Structures .....                              | 73        |
| C 4.7.      | Adaptive Coding and Modulation/Rate Adaption ..... | 73        |
| C 4.8.      | Slot Functions .....                               | 74        |
| C 4.8.1.    | Bulletin board signalling channel .....            | 74        |
| C 4.8.2.    | Random access channel .....                        | 74        |
| C 4.8.3.    | Announcement Signalling Channel.....               | 74        |
| C 4.8.4.    | Data Channel .....                                 | 74        |
| C 4.8.5.    | Data Signalling Channel .....                      | 74        |
| C 4.8.6.    | Ranging Channel.....                               | 74        |
| C 4.8.6.    | VDE-TER default slot functions.....                | 74        |

# CONTENTS

|  |    |
|--|----|
| C 4.9. VDE-TER Messages.....   | 76 |
| C 4.9.1. Media access control.....   | 77 |
| C 4.9.2. Resource allocation.....  | 77 |
| C 4.9.3. Ack/Nack.....   | 78 |
| C 4.9.4. Resource request/Transmission announcement.....                           | 79 |
| C 4.9.5. Short data message (with Ack).....  | 80 |
| C 4.9.6. Short data message (no ACK).....  | 80 |
| C 4.9.7. Bulletin board start fragment message.....                                | 80 |
| C 4.9.8. Bulletin board continuation fragment message.....                         | 82 |
| C 4.9.9. Bulletin board end fragment message.....                                  | 82 |
| C 4.9.10. Start fragment.....  | 85 |
| C 4.9.11. Continuation fragment.....   | 85 |
| C 4.9.12. End fragment.....  | 86 |
| C 4.9.13. Padding single byte.....   | 86 |
| C 4.10. Cyclic redundancy check.....   | 86 |
| C 4.11. Acknowledgement (ACK).....   | 86 |
| C 4.12. Logical Channels (LC).....   | 86 |
| C 4.13. VDE-TER Bulletin Board.....  | 86 |
| C 4.14. VDE-TER default physical channel and slotmap.....                          | 87 |
| C 4.15. Digital Signature of Bulletin Board.....                                   | 88 |
| C 4.16. Data transfer protocols.....   | 89 |
| C 4.17. Data Session Transmission and Continuation.....                            | 89 |
| C 4.18. Data Frame Retry.....  | 90 |
| C 4.19. Cooperation with AIS.....  | 91 |
| C 4.20. Short data message.....  | 91 |
| C 4.21. Random access channel scheme.....  | 91 |
| C 4.22. Announcement channel access scheme.....                                    | 92 |
| C 4.23. Logical Channel access.....  | 92 |
| C 4.24. Logical channel use map.....   | 92 |
| C 4.25. Unused LC slots as RAC slots.....  | 92 |
| C 4.26. Logical channel assignment.....  | 92 |
| C 4.27. Retry mechanism.....   | 92 |
| C 4.28. Data transfer protocol Detail.....   | 92 |
| C 4.28.1. Shore originated broadcast.....  | 92 |
| C 4.28.2. Ship originated broadcast outside control station service area.....      | 93 |
| C 4.28.3. Ship originated broadcast inside control station service area.....       | 93 |
| C 4.28.4. Shore to ship addressed message.....                                     | 94 |
| C 4.28.5. Ship to shore addressed message.....                                     | 95 |
| C 4.28.6. Ship to ship addressed message outside control station service area..... | 95 |

# CONTENTS

|                |  |            |
|----------------|--|------------|
| C 4.28.7.      | Ship to ship addressed message inside control station service area .....                     | 96         |
| C 4.28.8.      | Shore to ship short data message .....   | 97         |
| C 4.28.9.      | Ship to shore short data message .....   | 98         |
| C 4.28.10.     | Ship to ship short data message .....  | 98         |
| <b>C 4.29.</b> | <b>Data Transfer Protocol State Diagrams .....</b>   | <b>99</b>  |
| C 4.29.1.      | Ship to Ship Addressed Message Outside Control Station Service Area .....                    | 99         |
| <b>C 4.30.</b> | <b>Segmentation of VDE payload .....</b>   | <b>101</b> |
| C 4.30.1.      | Segment description .....  | 103        |
| <b>C 5.</b>    | <b>Network layer.....</b>  | <b>103</b> |
| <b>C 6.</b>    | <b>Transport layer .....</b>   | <b>103</b> |
| <b>C 7.</b>    | <b>Session Layer.....</b>  | <b>103</b> |
| <b>C 8.</b>    | <b>Presentation Interface Layer .....</b>  | <b>103</b> |
| C 8.1.         | VDE data message sentence .....  | 103        |
| C 8.2.         | VDE data message sentence own-vessel report.....   | 104        |
| C 8.3.         | VDE data message sentence ACK/NACK.....  | 104        |
| C 8.4.         | EPV Command or report equipment property value .....   | 104        |
| <b>ANNEX D</b> | <b>Technical Characteristics of VDE-SAT service in the VHF Maritime Mobile Band.....</b>     | <b>106</b> |
| <b>D 1</b>     | <b>Introduction .....</b>  | <b>106</b> |
| <b>D 2</b>     | <b>physical layer.....</b>   | <b>106</b> |
| <b>D 2.1.</b>  | <b>VHF data exchange satellite component key parameters.....</b>                             | <b>106</b> |
| D 2.1.1.       | Satellite to surface distance range .....  | 106        |
| D 2.1.2.       | Satellite transmission carrier frequency error.....  | 107        |
| D 2.1.3.       | Ship station transmitter and receiver requirements .....                                     | 108        |
| D 2.1.4.       | Ship station antenna gain .....  | 108        |
| D 2.1.5.       | Ship station noise plus interference level.....  | 108        |
| D 2.1.6.       | Satellite antenna characteristics .....  | 108        |
| <b>D 2.2.</b>  | <b>Technical characteristics of the VHF data exchange satellite component downlink .....</b> | <b>109</b> |
| D 2.2.1.       | Satellite downlink equivalent isotropic radiated power.....                                  | 109        |
| D 2.2.2.       | VHF data exchange satellite component downlink receiver thresholds .....                     | 110        |
| D 2.2.3.       | VHF data exchange satellite component downlink link budget .....                             | 110        |
| <b>D 2.3.</b>  | <b>Technical characteristics of the VHF data exchange satellite component uplink .....</b>   | <b>111</b> |
| D 2.3.1.       | VHF data exchange satellite component uplink receiver thresholds .....                       | 111        |
| D 2.3.2.       | Satellite system noise temperature.....  | 111        |
| D 2.3.3.       | VHF data exchange satellite component uplink link budget .....                               | 111        |
| <b>D 2.4.</b>  | <b>Bit mapping.....</b>  | <b>112</b> |
| <b>D 2.5.</b>  | <b>SPREADING .....</b>   | <b>112</b> |
| D 2.5.1.       | Spread spectrum with constant envelope.....  | 112        |
| D 2.5.2.       | Direct sequence spreading for downlink waveforms .....                                       | 115        |
| <b>D 2.6.</b>  | <b>Baseband shaping and quadrature modulation .....</b>                                      | <b>115</b> |



# CONTENTS

---

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| D 2.7. Transmission timing accuracy.....                         | 115        |
| D 2.8. Half duplex and full duplex satellites.....               | 115        |
| D 2.9. Frame structure .....                                     | 117        |
| D 2.10. Pilots and Syncword symbol location and modulation ..... | 117        |
| D 2.11. Forward Error Correction and interleaving .....          | 118        |
| D 2.12. VDE-SAT link configuration formats .....                 | 118        |
| D 2.13. VDE-SAT Downlink Block Channel Interleaver.....          | 118        |
| <b>D 3 Link layer.....</b>                                       | <b>119</b> |
| D 3.1. Link layer definitions.....                               | 119        |
| D 3.1.1. Physical Channel.....                                   | 119        |
| D 3.1.2. Channel Pair .....                                      | 119        |
| D 3.1.3. Logical channel .....                                   | 119        |
| D 3.1.4. VDE Slotmap.....  | 119        |
| D 3.1.5. Bulletin board.....                                     | 119        |
| D 3.1.6. Short data message.....                                 | 119        |
| D 3.1.7. Data session .....                                      | 119        |
| D 3.1.8. Data Fragment.....                                      | 119        |
| D 3.2. Resource management.....                                  | 119        |
| D 3.3. Endianness .....  | 120        |
| D 3.4. Data structures .....                                     | 120        |
| D 3.5. Slot functions .....                                      | 120        |
| D 3.5.1. Satellite bulletin board signalling channel.....        | 120        |
| D 3.5.2. Announcement signalling channel .....                   | 120        |
| D 3.5.3. Data acknowledgement signalling channel .....           | 120        |
| D 3.5.4. Random access channel .....                             | 120        |
| D 3.5.5. Data up or down channel .....                           | 120        |
| D 3.5.6. Empty channel.....                                      | 120        |
| D 3.6. Guard slot .....  | 120        |
| D 3.7. VDE-SAT default bulletin board .....                      | 121        |
| D 3.8. Use of the Data Acknowledgement Signalling Channel.....   | 123        |
| D 3.9. VDE-SAT message summary .....                             | 124        |
| D 3.10. VDE-SAT message descriptions.....                        | 125        |
| D 3.10.1. Satellite Bulletin Board.....                          | 125        |
| D 3.10.2. Media Access Control .....                             | 130        |
| D 3.10.3. Paging.....  | 130        |
| D 3.10.4. Paging Response.....                                   | 131        |
| D 3.10.5. Resource Request.....                                  | 131        |
| D 3.10.6. Resource Allocation.....                               | 132        |
| D 3.10.7. Start Fragment .....                                   | 133        |



# CONTENTS

|                |   |            |
|----------------|---|------------|
| D 3.10.8.      | Continuation Fragment .....   | 133        |
| D 3.10.9.      | End Fragment .....  | 134        |
| D 3.10.10.     | End Delivery Notification to ship .....   | 134        |
| D 3.10.11.     | End Delivery Notification from ship .....   | 135        |
| D 3.10.12.     | Downlink Acknowledgement.....   | 135        |
| D 3.10.13.     | Uplink Acknowledgement .....  | 135        |
| D 3.10.14.     | Downlink Short message (with Ack) .....   | 136        |
| D 3.10.15.     | Downlink Short message (without Ack).....   | 136        |
| D 3.10.16.     | Uplink Short Message (With Ack) .....   | 137        |
| D 3.10.17.     | Uplink Short message (without Ack) .....  | 137        |
| D 3.10.18.     | Uplink Short message (without Ack) .....  | 137        |
| <b>D 3.11.</b> | <b>Retry mechanism .....</b>  | <b>137</b> |
| <b>D 3.12.</b> | <b>Data transfer protocol details.....</b>  | <b>138</b> |
| D 3.12.1.      | Paging.....   | 138        |
| D 3.12.2.      | Satellite originated broadcast .....  | 138        |
| D 3.12.3.      | Ship transmission without ACK.....  | 139        |
| D 3.12.4.      | Satellite to ship addressed message.....  | 139        |
| D 3.12.5.      | Satellite to Ship Addressed Message with EDN.....                                 | 140        |
| D 3.12.6.      | Ship to satellite addressed message.....  | 141        |
| D 3.12.7.      | Satellite to ship short data message (with Ack) .....                             | 142        |
| D 3.12.8.      | Ship to satellite short data message (with Ack) .....                             | 142        |
| D 3.12.9.      | Satellite to ship short data message (no Ack) .....                               | 143        |
| D 3.12.10.     | Ship to satellite short data message (no Ack) .....                               | 143        |
| <b>D 3.13.</b> | <b>Random access .....</b>  | <b>144</b> |
| <b>D 3.14.</b> | <b>Logical channel assignment .....</b>   | <b>144</b> |
| <b>D 4</b>     | <b>Network layer.....</b>   | <b>144</b> |
| <b>D 5</b>     | <b>Transport layer .....</b>  | <b>144</b> |
| <b>D 6</b>     | <b>Session layer.....</b>   | <b>144</b> |
| <b>D 7</b>     | <b>Presentation Layer.....</b>  | <b>145</b> |
| <b>ANNEX E</b> | <b>Resource Sharing Method for VDES Terrestrial and Satellite Services .....</b>  | <b>146</b> |
| <b>E 1</b>     | <b>INTRODUCTION .....</b>   | <b>146</b> |
| <b>E 2</b>     | <b>VDES resource sharing principles.....</b>                                      | <b>146</b> |
| E 2.1          | AIS priority .....  | 146        |
| E 2.2          | Coordination between ASM and VDE.....   | 146        |
| E 2.3          | Shore station VDES control area.....  | 146        |
| <b>E 3</b>     | <b>VDE-TER Resource sharing between multiple controlling shore stations .....</b> | <b>146</b> |
| <b>E 4</b>     | <b>VDE-TER and VDE-SAT resource sharing.....</b>                                  | <b>147</b> |
| <b>E 5</b>     | <b>Sharing between different VDE satellite systems .....</b>                      | <b>147</b> |

# CONTENTS

---

## List of Tables

|   |           |
|---|-----------|
| <i>Table 1 Pfd-mask for VDE-SAT downlink to ensure interoperability and compatibility with VDE-TER.....</i> | <i>18</i> |
| <i>Table 2 – syncwords for VDES.....</i>  | <i>26</i> |
| <i>Table 3 Reed-Muller Generator Matrix .....</i>   | <i>26</i> |
| <i>Table 4 - Link ID code words for VDES .....</i>  | <i>26</i> |
| <i>Table 5 - Interleaver and Puncturing Parameters for Different Information lengths / code rates.....</i>  | <i>30</i> |
| <i>Table 6 - Puncturing Patterns for Data Bit Periods.....</i>  | <i>31</i> |
| <i>Table 7 - Puncturing and Repetition Patterns for Tail Bit Periods (last 6 clocks).....</i>               | <i>33</i> |
| <i>Table 8 - ASM Link ID parameters .....</i>   | <i>36</i> |
| <i>Table 9 - VDE-TER Link ID parameters.....</i>  | <i>37</i> |
| <i>Table 10 - VDE-SAT UpLink ID parameters .....</i>  | <i>38</i> |
| <i>Table 11 – VDE-SAT DownLink ID Parameters.....</i>   | <i>39</i> |
| <i>Table 12 - VDE-SAT DownLink ID Parameters (continued) .....</i>  | <i>39</i> |
| <i>Table 13 - Ship receiver noise figure calculations.....</i>  | <i>44</i> |
| <i>Table 14 - Transmitter parameters.....</i>   | <i>44</i> |
| <i>Table 15 - Minimum ship e.i.r.p. vs. elevation angle .....</i>   | <i>45</i> |
| <i>Table 16 - Minimum required time division multiple access transmitter characteristics.....</i>           | <i>48</i> |
| <i>Table 17 - Minimum required time division multiple access transmitter characteristics.....</i>           | <i>49</i> |
| <i>Table 18 - Minimum required time division multiple access receiver characteristics without FEC .....</i> | <i>50</i> |
| <i>Table 19 - Packet symbol structure for <math>\pi/4</math> QPSK modulation scheme .....</i>               | <i>53</i> |
| <i>Table 20 - RATDMA Parameters.....</i>  | <i>56</i> |
| <i>Table 21 - MITDMA communication state parameters.....</i>  | <i>59</i> |
| <i>Table 22 - Quiet Time Multiplier.....</i>  | <i>60</i> |
| <i>Table 23 - ASM identifier parameters.....</i>  | <i>61</i> |
| <i>Table 24 – Slot transmission structure .....</i>   | <i>63</i> |
| <i>Table 25 – Message Summary.....</i>  | <i>63</i> |
| <i>Table 26 - Broadcast AIS ASM Message .....</i>   | <i>64</i> |
| <i>Table 27 - Scheduled broadcast message.....</i>  | <i>65</i> |
| <i>Table 28 - Broadcast Message.....</i>  | <i>65</i> |
| <i>Table 29 - Scheduled addressed message .....</i>   | <i>66</i> |
| <i>Table 30 - Addressed message .....</i>   | <i>66</i> |
| <i>Table 31 - Acknowledgment message.....</i>   | <i>67</i> |
| <i>Table 32 - Geographical multicast message.....</i>   | <i>67</i> |
| <i>Table 33 - Sensitivity and Carrier to Interference Ratios .....</i>                                      | <i>71</i> |
| <i>Table 34 – VDE Message Summary .....</i>   | <i>76</i> |

# CONTENTS

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Table 35 – Media Access Control.....  | 77  |
| Table 36 – Resource Allocation.....   | 77  |
| Table 37 – ACK/NACK .....   | 78  |
| Table 38 – Resource Request / Transmission Announcement.....  | 79  |
| Table 39 – Short Data Message (with ACK).....   | 80  |
| Table 40 Short Data Message (no ACK).....   | 80  |
| Table 41 – Bulletin Board Start Fragment Message.....   | 80  |
| Table 42 – Bulletin Board Payload.....  | 81  |
| Table 43 Control station service area .....   | 81  |
| Table 44 – Bulletin Board Continuation Fragment Message.....  | 82  |
| Table 45 – Bulletin Board End Fragment Message.....   | 82  |
| Table 46 - Physical Channel Definition.....   | 83  |
| Table 47 - Logical Channel definition terrestrial.....  | 83  |
| Table 48 – Start Fragment.....  | 85  |
| Table 49 – Continuation Fragment.....   | 85  |
| Table 50 – End Fragment.....  | 86  |
| Table 51 – Padding Single Byte.....   | 86  |
| Table 52 – Segment Description .....  | 103 |
| Table 53 – Property identifier .....  | 105 |
| Table 54 – Satellite antenna gain versus ship elevation angle, nadir offset angle and boresight offset angle..... | 109 |
| Table 55 – Maximum satellite maximum e.i.r.p. as a function of elevation angle.....                               | 109 |
| Table 56 - Satellite e.i.r.p. and margin to the pfd-mask as a function of vs. elevation angle .....               | 110 |
| Table 57 - VHF data exchange satellite component downlink budget as function of elevation angle.....              | 111 |
| Table 58 - Satellite receiver system noise temperature.....   | 111 |
| Table 59 – VHF data exchange satellite component uplink link budget.....  | 112 |
| Table 60 – Gold spreading sequences.....  | 115 |
| Table 61 Channel interleaver parameters for VDE-SAT downlink burst waveforms .....                                | 119 |
| Table 62: Default VDE-SAT Channel Pairs.....  | 121 |
| Table 63 VDE-SAT Message Summary.....   | 124 |
| Table 64 Satellite Bulletin Board (up to 6 fragments) .....   | 125 |
| Table 65 Satellite Bulletin Board (Fragment 2).....   | 126 |
| Table 66 Satellite Bulletin Board (Fragment 3).....   | 127 |
| Table 67 Satellite Bulletin Board (Fragment 4).....   | 128 |
| Table 68 Satellite Bulletin Board (Fragment 5).....   | 129 |
| Table 69 Satellite Bulletin Board (Fragment 6).....   | 129 |
| Table 70 Media Access Control.....  | 130 |
| Table 71 Paging .....   | 130 |

# CONTENTS

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Table 72 Paging Response .....                      | 131 |
| Table 73 Resource Request .....                     | 132 |
| Table 74 Resource Allocation .....                  | 132 |
| Table 75 Start Fragment .....                       | 133 |
| Table 76 Continuation Fragment .....                | 133 |
| Table 77 End Fragment .....                         | 134 |
| Table 78 End Delivery Notification to ship .....    | 134 |
| Table 79 End Delivery Notification from ship .....  | 135 |
| Table 80 Downlink Acknowledgement .....             | 135 |
| Table 81 Uplink Acknowledgement .....               | 135 |
| Table 82 Downlink Short Message (with Ack) .....    | 136 |
| Table 83 Downlink Short Message (without Ack) ..... | 136 |
| Table 84 Uplink Short Message (with Ack) .....      | 137 |
| Table 85 Uplink Short Message (without Ack) .....   | 137 |
| Table 86 Uplink Short Message (without Ack) .....   | 137 |

## List of Figures

|  |    |
|--|----|
| Figure 1 - VDES functions illustrated .....  | 18 |
| Figure 1 VDES frequency usage .....  | 19 |
| Figure 2 - Seven-layer OSI model .....   | 24 |
| Figure 3 - ASM-TER and VDE-TER General Slot Format .....                                 | 25 |
| Figure 4 - ASM-SAT and VDE-SAT General Slot Format .....                                 | 25 |
| Figure 5 – Typical order of operations for Symbol Data; if CR=1 FEC is not applied ..... | 28 |
| Figure 6 - Turbo encoder structure (high-level) .....                                    | 29 |
| Figure 7 - RSC code encoder .....  | 29 |
| Figure 8 - Bit scrambling .....  | 35 |
| Figure 9 – Bit Mapping for BPSK .....  | 42 |
| Figure 10 - Bit Mapping for $\pi/4$ QPSK .....   | 42 |
| Figure 11 - 8PSK symbol to bit mapping .....   | 43 |
| Figure 12 - Bit Mapping for 16QAM .....  | 44 |
| Figure 13 - Slotted Transmission Mask (VDE) .....  | 45 |
| Figure 14 - ASM Slotted modulation mask .....  | 49 |
| Figure 15 – ASM candidate slot selection algorithm .....                                 | 55 |
| Figure 16 - Network Access for MITDMA and RATDMA .....                                   | 57 |
| Figure 17 - Message Structure .....  | 57 |

# CONTENTS

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Figure 18 - MITDMA Message Structure .....  | 58  |
| Figure 19 - MITDMA Access Example .....   | 62  |
| Figure 20 - TDMA hierarchy.....   | 71  |
| Figure 21 - Single/Multiple Message, zero padding and CRC-32 structure .....  | 73  |
| Figure 22 - VDE-TER Ship to Shore default slot functions (lower leg).....   | 74  |
| Figure 23 - VDE-TER Ship to Ship and Shore to Ship default slot functions (upper leg).....                                | 75  |
| Figure 24 - VDE-TER Ship to Shore default slot to LC mapping (lower leg).....   | 88  |
| Figure 25 - VDE-TER Ship to Ship default slot to LC mapping (upper leg).....  | 88  |
| Figure 26 - Simplex data session.....   | 89  |
| Figure 27 - Duplex data session .....   | 90  |
| Figure 28 - Simplex Data Session Retry.....   | 91  |
| Figure 29 - Shore originated broadcast sequence diagram.....  | 93  |
| Figure 30 - Ship originated broadcast outside control station service area sequence diagram.....                          | 93  |
| Figure 31 - Ship originated broadcast inside control station service area sequence diagram .....                          | 94  |
| Figure 32 - Shore to ship addressed message sequence diagram .....  | 94  |
| Figure 33 - Ship to shore addressed message sequence diagram .....  | 95  |
| Figure 34 - Ship to ship addressed message outside control station service area sequence diagram .....                    | 96  |
| Figure 35 - Ship to ship addressed message inside control station service area sequence diagram .....                     | 97  |
| Figure 36 - Shore to ship short data message sequence diagram .....   | 97  |
| Figure 37 - Shore to ship short data message sequence diagram .....   | 98  |
| Figure 38 - Ship to shore short data message sequence diagram .....   | 98  |
| Figure 39 - Ship to ship short data message sequence diagram .....  | 99  |
| Figure 40 - Example Addressed ship to ship transmit state diagram .....   | 100 |
| Figure 41 - Example Addressed ship to ship receive state diagram .....  | 101 |
| Figure 42 - Segmentation of VDE payload.....  | 102 |
| Figure 43 - Segmentation across data session boundaries.....  | 102 |
| Figure 44 - VDE-SAT downlink timing .....   | 107 |
| Figure 45 - VDE-SAT Uplink timing.....  | 107 |
| Figure 46 – Illustration showing how the Yagi antenna and its main lobe is pointed towards the horizon of the earth. .... | 108 |
| Figure 47 - CPM Spreading Principle.....  | 113 |
| Figure 48 - Proposed Spreading in the CPM .....   | 114 |
| Figure 49 - Half-duplex and full duplex satellite operation .....   | 116 |
| Figure 50 - General PL burst structure with repetitive sync word and distributed single pilot symbols.....                | 118 |
| Figure 51: Use of guard slot.....   | 121 |
| Figure 52: VDE-SAT Slotmap for Channel Pair A & B .....   | 122 |
| Figure 53 VDE-SAT Slotmap for Channel Pair C to F .....   | 123 |

# CONTENTS

---

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| <i>Figure 54 Mapping of DSCH sub-channels.....</i>                    | <i>123</i> |
| <i>Figure 55. Paging.....</i>   | <i>138</i> |
| <i>Figure 56 Satellite originated broadcast .....</i>                 | <i>139</i> |
| <i>Figure 57 Ship transmission without ACK.....</i>                   | <i>139</i> |
| <i>Figure 58 Satellite to ship addressed message.....</i>             | <i>140</i> |
| <i>Figure 59 Satellite to ship addressed message with EDN.....</i>    | <i>141</i> |
| <i>Figure 60 Ship to satellite addressed message.....</i>             | <i>142</i> |
| <i>Figure 61 Satellite to ship short data message (with Ack).....</i> | <i>142</i> |
| <i>Figure 62 Ship to satellite short data message (with Ack).....</i> | <i>143</i> |
| <i>Figure 63 Satellite to ship short data message (no Ack).....</i>   | <i>143</i> |
| <i>Figure 64 Ship to satellite short data message (no Ack).....</i>   | <i>144</i> |

DRAFT



# 1 INTRODUCTION

## 1.1 PURPOSE OF THE DOCUMENT

This Guideline has been prepared to provide technical information required in the development of VHF data exchange system (VDES) equipment, which integrates the functions of VHF data exchange (VDE), application specific messages (ASM) and the automatic identification system (AIS) in the VHF maritime mobile band (156.025-162.025 MHz).

This document refers to International Telecommunication Union (ITU) Recommendation ITU-R M.2092, and is not intended to replace that document. The IALA Guideline on Technical Specifications of VDES provides additional detail on VDES, and will be amended as required to reflect experience in implementing the technical solutions for VDES. As this IALA Guideline is revised, input will be included, as appropriate, as a working document towards a revision of ITU-R M.2092. It is intended that this input will be provided to the appropriate working group of ITU following the results of the ITU World Radiocommunication Conference 2019 (WRC-19).

Persons using this document are encouraged to provide comments, corrections and further input on developments to IALA. In addition, persons who are implementing VDES are invited to participate in further work on the system through the IALA ENAV Committee. It is noted that, as VDES develops, any deployment of VDES will need to comply with the appropriate ITU regulation, once they are agreed.

## 1.2 BACKGROUND

The automatic identification system (AIS) is well recognised and accepted as an important tool for safety of navigation and is a carriage requirement for SOLAS vessels (Class-A). With increasing demand for maritime VHF data communications, AIS has become heavily used for maritime safety, maritime situational awareness and port security. As a result, high loading of AIS 1 and AIS 2 created a need for additional VHF data channels. Using the VHF maritime mobile band (ITU Radio Regulations Appendix 18) AIS can broadcast data to vessels in the vicinity of the AIS unit. AIS can also transmit an addressed message.

ITU has recognised the efficiency and the necessity for digital communications, has produced technical standards and has revised the VHF maritime mobile band to designate channels for data transmission. It is recognized that both analogue voice communications and digital communications will share the band. The VDES, as envisioned by IALA and presented to ITU, addresses the identified need to protect AIS along with essential digital communications contributions for e-Navigation and global maritime distress and safety system (GMDSS) modernization.

Both voice and data communications coexist in the VHF maritime mobile band. The developments in maritime radio technology, including the introduction of software defined radio (SDR) coupled with enhanced capabilities for digital data exchange over existing maritime VHF spectrum resulted in the development of the VDES. VDES builds on the experience gained through the development of AIS, and also provides the capability to transmit to a specific vessel (addressed); to all units in the vicinity (broadcast); to a group of vessels (addressed); or to a fleet of vessels (addressed).

As part of the preparations for WRC-15, the ITU-R WP 5B developed Recommendation ITU-R M.2092-0. During the study cycle leading up to WRC-19 ITU-R WP 5B developed Report ITU-R M.2435-0, which describes the satellite component of VDE (VDE-SAT). That report formed the basis for allocation of frequencies to VDE-SAT at WRC-19.

## 1.3 DOCUMENT STRUCTURE

The document is provided in a series of Annexes.

Annex A - provides common technical elements of VDES



Annex B - describes the technical characteristics of the ASM channel that will support applications specific messages in order to improve the efficiency of application-specific message transmissions and to protect the original function of the AIS. The ASM channels will also support a satellite uplink.

Annex C - describes the technical characteristics of the terrestrial component VDE (VDE-TER), which provides an efficient terrestrial data transfer link enabling a wide variety of applications for the maritime community.

Annex D - describes the technical characteristics of the satellite component of VDE (VDE-SAT), which provides an efficient satellite data transfer link enabling a wide variety of applications for the maritime community

Annex E - describes the characteristics necessary for each component of the VDES to share the available spectrum such that impact between services is minimized and AIS is respected.

## 2 OPERATIONAL CHARACTERISTICS

In general, VDES should meet the following:

- 1 The system should give its highest priority to the AIS position reporting and safety related information.
- 2 The system installation should be capable of receiving and processing the digital messages and interrogating calls specified by this recommendation.
- 3 The system should be capable of transmitting additional safety information on request.
- 4 The system installation should be able to operate continuously while under way, moored or at anchor.
- 5 The system should use time-division multiple access (TDMA) techniques, access schemes and data transmission methods in a synchronized manner as specified in the Annexes.
- 6 The system should be capable of various modes of operation, including the autonomous, assigned and polled modes.
- 7 The system should provide flexibility for the users in order to prioritize some applications and, consequently, adapt some parameters of the transmission (robustness or capacity) while minimizing system complexity.
- 8 The system should address the use cases identified in Report ITU-R M.2371.
- 9 The VDES shipborne stations should have one multi-function transmitter and a multi-channel and multi-function receiver capable of simultaneously supporting the functions specified in this recommendation. These functions include AIS, ASM, VDE-TER and VDE-SAT.

### 2.1 GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF VDES

A detailed overview of VDES, and VDES operations, is provided in IALA Guideline 1117 (latest edition). In essence, the VDES provides a variety of means for the exchange of data between maritime stations, ship-to-ship, ship-to-shore, shore-to ship, ship-to-satellite and satellite-to-ship. The VDES is a multi-component system comprising of VHF data exchange (VDE), application specific messages (ASM) and the automatic identification system (AIS) in the VHF maritime mobile band (156.025-162.025 MHz). The VDE has a terrestrial component (VDE-TER) and a satellite component (VDE-SAT). The VDES functions are illustrated pictorially in Figure 1.

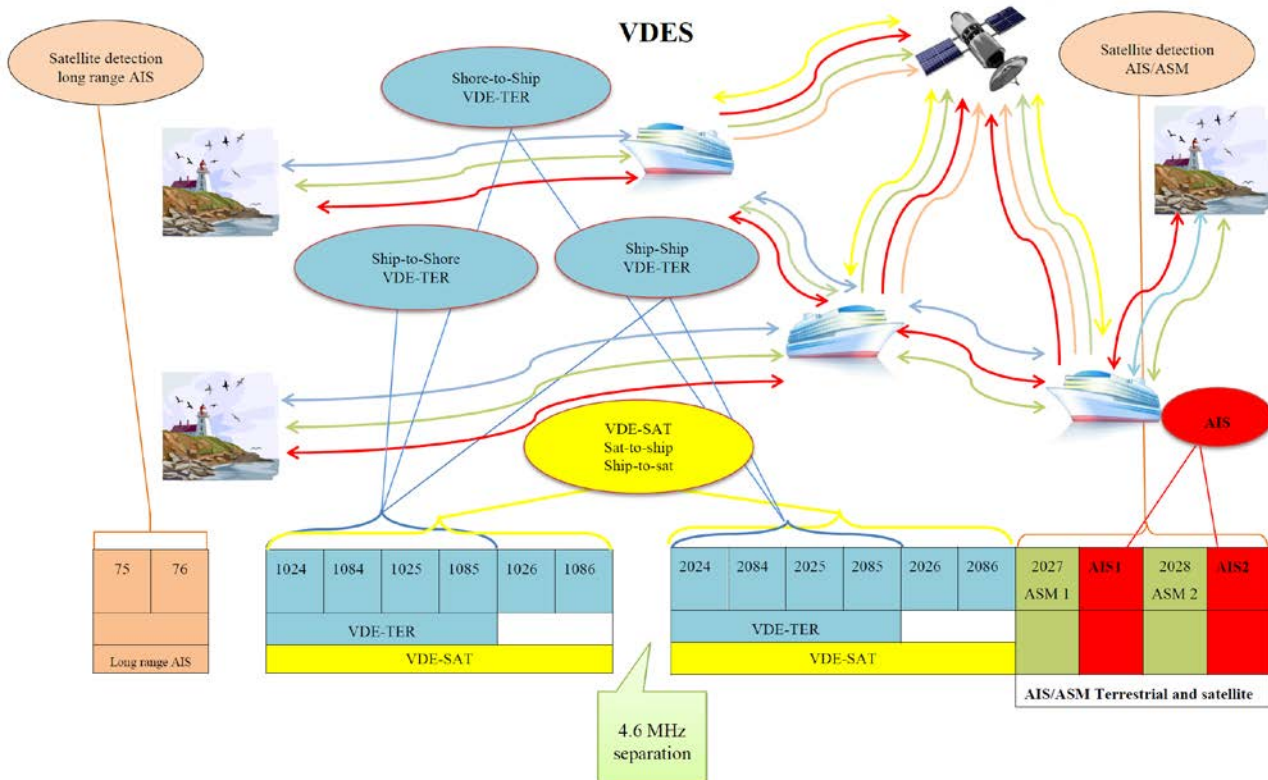


Figure 1 - VDES functions illustrated

### 3 KEY TECHNICAL CHARACTERISTICS

A general overview of the technical aspects of VDES is provided in IALA Guideline 1117. This section provides more detailed technical characteristics.

#### 3.1 SATELLITE DOWNLINK

To ensure interoperability and compatibility between VDE-TER and VDE-SAT a pfd-mask has been defined as given in Table 1.

Table 1 Pfd-mask for VDE-SAT downlink to ensure interoperability and compatibility with VDE-TER

$\theta^\circ$  = earth – satellite elevation angle

$$PFD(\theta^\circ) \text{ (dBW/(m}^2 \cdot 4 \text{ kHz))} = \begin{cases} -149 + 0.16 * \theta^\circ & 0^\circ \leq \theta < 45^\circ; \\ -142 + 0.53 * (\theta^\circ - 45^\circ) & 45^\circ \leq \theta < 60^\circ; \\ -134 + 0.1 * (\theta^\circ - 60^\circ) & 60^\circ \leq \theta \leq 90^\circ. \end{cases}$$

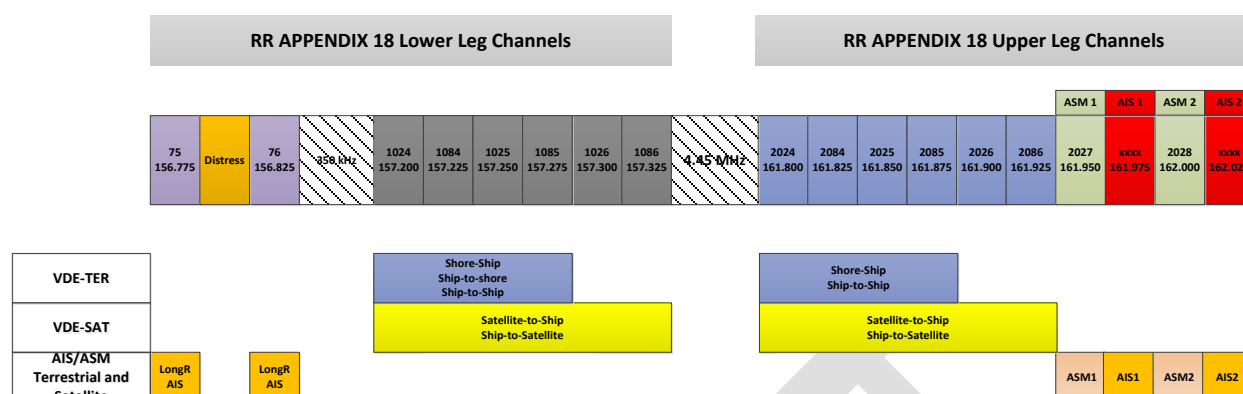
#### 3.2 VDE-TER MAY OPERATE IN EITHER DUPLEX OR SIMPLEX MODE

VDE-TER may operate in duplex mode by using the lower leg channels for ship-to-shore and the upper leg channels for shore-to-ship and ship-to-ship digital messaging, see **Error! Reference source not found..**

VDE-TER may operate in simplex mode by using the lower leg channels for ship-to-shore, shore-to-ship and ship-to-ship digital messaging, see **Error! Reference source not found..**

#### 3.3 VDES CHANNEL USAGE IN ACCORDANCE WITH ITU RR APPENDIX 18

This section provides information on channel usage between terrestrial stations and between satellite and terrestrial stations. The VDES frequency usage is illustrated in Figure 2 **Error! Reference source not found..**



**Figure 2 VDES frequency usage**

- AIS 1 and AIS 2 are AIS channels, used in accordance with Recommendation ITU-R M.1371, and are also used for receiving AIS messages by satellite;
- Long Range AIS using channel 75 and channel 76 are used in accordance with Recommendation ITU-R M.1371 for receiving AIS messages by satellite;
- ASM 1 and ASM 2 are ASM channels used in accordance with this recommendation for application specific messages (ASM), and are also used for receiving ASM by satellite;
- The channels 1024, 1084, 1025 and 1085 are VDE channels used in accordance with this recommendation and identified for ship-to-shore, shore-to-ship and ship-to-ship VDE, but ship-to-satellite and satellite-to-ship VDE may be possible without imposing constraints on ship-to-shore, shore-to-ship and ship-to-ship VDE.
- The channels 2024, 2084, 2025 and 2085 are VDE channels used in accordance with this recommendation and are identified for shore-to-ship and ship-to-ship VDE, but ship-to-satellite and satellite-to-ship VDE may be possible without imposing constraints on shore-to-ship and ship-to-ship VDE.
- The channels 1026, 1086, 2026 and 2086 are VDE channels used in accordance with this recommendation and are identified for ship-to-satellite and satellite-to-ship VDE and are not used by the terrestrial component of VDE.

### 3.4 STATION IDENTIFICATION

Identification and location of all active maritime stations is provided automatically by means of the AIS. All VDES stations should be uniquely identified. For the purpose of identification, a unique numerical identifier is used as defined by the following:

- If the unique identifier has a range which is less than or equal to 999999999, then this number is defined by the most recent version of Recommendation ITU-R M.585.
- If the unique identifier has a range which is greater than 999999999, then this number is free form.

### 3.5 PRESENTATION INTERFACE PROTOCOL

For VDES transceivers:

- data may be input via the presentation interface to be transmitted by the VDES station;
- data received by the VDES station should be output through the presentation interface.

### 3.6 VDES COMMUNICATIONS PRIORITIZATION

The priority and timing of ship station transmissions shall be in accordance with the following service priorities:

- Highest              Priority 1: AIS transmissions
- Priority 2: ASM transmissions
- Priority 3: VDE transmissions

The ship station VDES receivers should always be active. It is understood that transmissions by own equipment may impair reception by own equipment on own ship.

## 4 DEFINITIONS / ACRONYMS AND REFERENCES

The definitions of terms used in this Guideline can be found in the International Dictionary of Marine Aids to Navigation (IALA Dictionary) at <http://www.iala-aism.org/wiki/dictionary> and were checked as correct at the time of going to print. Where conflict arises, the IALA Dictionary should be considered as the authoritative source of definitions used in IALA documents.

### 4.1 DEFINITIONS

**Control Station**      Coast base station, satellite or other VDES station that is transmitting bulletin board and provides routing services to the maritime cloud.

### 4.2 ACRONYMS

|             |                                     |
|-------------|-------------------------------------|
| <b>ACK</b>  | Acknowledgement                     |
| <b>ACM</b>  | Adaptive Coding and Modulation      |
| <b>AIS</b>  | Automatic identification system     |
| <b>ASC</b>  | Announcement signalling channel     |
| <b>ASM</b>  | Application-specific messages       |
| <b>AWGN</b> | Additive white Gaussian noise       |
| <b>BB</b>   | Bulletin board                      |
| <b>BBSC</b> | Bulletin board signalling channel   |
| <b>BER</b>  | Bit error rate                      |
| <b>BPSK</b> | Binary phase shift keying           |
| <b>BW</b>   | Bandwidth                           |
| <b>CA</b>   | Certificate Authority               |
| <b>CDMA</b> | Code division multiple access       |
| <b>C/M</b>  | Carrier to multipath                |
| <b>CPM</b>  | Continuous phase modulation         |
| <b>CQI</b>  | Channel quality indicator           |
| <b>CR</b>   | Code rate                           |
| <b>CRC</b>  | Cyclic redundancy check             |
| <b>CIRM</b> | Comité International Radio Maritime |



|               |   |
|---------------|---|
| <b>DC</b>     | Data channel  |
| <b>DAC</b>    | Designated area code  |
| <b>DLS</b>    | Data link service   |
| <b>DSCH</b>   | Data signalling channel   |
| <b>ECC</b>    | Elliptic Curve Cryptography   |
| <b>ECDSA</b>  | Elliptic Curve Digital Signature Algorithm  |
| <b>EDN</b>    | End delivery notification   |
| <b>EIRP</b>   | Equivalent isotropic radiated power (e.i.r.p.)                                    |
| <b>FATDMA</b> | Fixed access time-division multiple access  |
| <b>FEC</b>    | Forward error correction  |
| <b>FIFO</b>   | First-in first-out  |
| <b>GMDSS</b>  | Global maritime distress and safety system  |
| <b>GNSS</b>   | Global navigation satellite system  |
| <b>HS</b>     | Hexslot   |
| <b>IALA</b>   | International Association of Marine Aids to Navigation and Lighthouse Authorities |
| <b>ID</b>     | Identification  |
| <b>IEC</b>    | International Electrotechnical Commission   |
| <b>IMO</b>    | International Maritime Organization   |
| <b>IP</b>     | Internet protocol   |
| <b>ITU</b>    | International Telecommunication Union   |
| <b>LC</b>     | Logical Channel   |
| <b>LEO</b>    | Low-earth orbiting  |
| <b>LME</b>    | Link management entity  |
| <b>LNA</b>    | Low noise amplifier   |
| <b>LSB</b>    | Least significant bit   |
| <b>MAC</b>    | Media access control  |
| <b>MCS</b>    | Modulation and coding scheme  |
| <b>MITDMA</b> | Multiple Incremental Time Division Multiple Access                                |
| <b>MMSI</b>   | Maritime mobile service identity  |
| <b>MSB</b>    | Most significant bit  |
| <b>NM</b>     | Nautical mile   |
| <b>OSI</b>    | Open systems interconnection  |
| <b>PAPR</b>   | Peak to average power ratio   |
| <b>PC</b>     | Physical Channel  |
| <b>PCN</b>    | Physical Channel number   |
| <b>PI</b>     | Presentation Interface  |



|                |  |
|----------------|--|
| <b>PKI</b>     | Public Key Infrastructure                        |
| <b>PL</b>      | Physical layer                                   |
| <b>PFD</b>     | Power flux-density                               |
| <b>ppm</b>     | parts per million                                |
| <b>PSK</b>     | Phase shift keying                               |
| <b>QAM</b>     | Quadrature amplitude modulation                  |
| <b>QPSK</b>    | Quadrature phase shift keying                    |
| <b>RA</b>      | Random access                                    |
| <b>RADC</b>    | Random access short messaging channel            |
| <b>RATDMA</b>  | Random access time-division multiple access      |
| <b>RAC</b>     | Random access channel                            |
| <b>RC</b>      | Ranging channel                                  |
| <b>RF</b>      | Radio frequency                                  |
| <b>RSC</b>     | Recursive systematic convolutional               |
| <b>RR</b>      | Radio regulations                                |
| <b>SBB</b>     | Satellite Bulletin board                         |
| <b>SCTDMA</b>  | Slot carrier sense time division multiple access |
| <b>SDR</b>     | Software defined radio                           |
| <b>SI</b>      | Selection interval                               |
| <b>SNIR</b>    | Signal to noise plus interference ratio          |
| <b>SOLAS</b>   | Safety of Life at Sea Convention                 |
| <b>SOTDMA</b>  | Self-organized time division multiple access     |
| <b>SS</b>      | Spreading sequences                              |
| <b>Sym</b>     | Symbol   |
| <b>SYNC</b>    | Synchronization                                  |
| <b>TBB</b>     | Terrestrial bulletin board                       |
| <b>TBBSC</b>   | Terrestrial bulletin board signalling channel    |
| <b>TDMA</b>    | Time division multiple access                    |
| <b>Tx</b>      | Transmitter                                      |
| <b>UTC</b>     | Coordinated universal time                       |
| <b>VDE</b>     | VHF data exchange                                |
| <b>VDES</b>    | VHF data exchange system                         |
| <b>VDE-SAT</b> | Satellite component of the VDE                   |
| <b>VDE-TER</b> | Terrestrial component of the VDE                 |
| <b>VDL</b>     | VHF data link                                    |
| <b>VHF</b>     | Very high frequency                              |

### 4.3 REFERENCES

- [RD-1] ETSI EN 302 583 (V1.2.1) – Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB); Framing Structure, channel coding and modulation for Satellite Services to Handheld devices (SH) below 3 GHz.
- [RD-2] TM Synchronization and Channel Coding. Recommendation for Space Data System Standards, CCSDS 131.0-B-2. Blue Book. Issue 2. Washington, D.C.: CCSDS, August 2011.
- [RD-3] R. Mueller, On Random CDMA with Constant Envelope, ISIT 2011.
- [RD-4] Recommendation ITU-R P.372 – Radio Noise.
- [RD-5] Recommendation ITU-T H.222.0 : Information technology - Generic coding of moving pictures and associated audio information: Systems.
- [RD-6] European Standard ETSI EN 301 545-2 – Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB); Second Generation DVB – Interactive Satellite System (DVB-RCS2); Part 2: Lower Layers for Satellite standard.

## **ANNEX A**    **COMMON TECHNICAL ELEMENTS OF VDES**

This annex describes those elements of VDES that may be common across the ASM and VDE Channels.

### **A 1.    PROTOCOL LAYER**

#### **A 1.1.    PROTOCOL LAYER OVERVIEW**

The VDES architecture should utilize the open systems interconnection layers 1 to 4 (physical layer, link layer, network layer, transport layer) as illustrated in Figure 3.

|                    |
|--------------------|
| Application layer  |
| Presentation layer |
| Session layer      |
| Transport layer    |
| Network layer      |
| Link layer         |
| Physical layer     |

***Figure 3 - Seven-layer OSI model***

#### **A 1.2.    PHYSICAL LAYER**

This layer provides transmission and reception of raw bit streams over a physical medium including signal modulation, filtering/shaping upon transmission, and amplification, filtering, time and frequency synchronization, demodulation, and decoding upon reception.

##### **A 1.2.1.    TRANSMISSION ACCURACY FIGURES**

##### **A 1.2.1.1    Symbol timing accuracy (at the output)**

The timing accuracy of the transmit signal should be better than 5 ppm.

##### **A 1.2.1.2    Transmitter timing jitter**

The timing jitter should be better than 5% of the symbol interval (peak value).

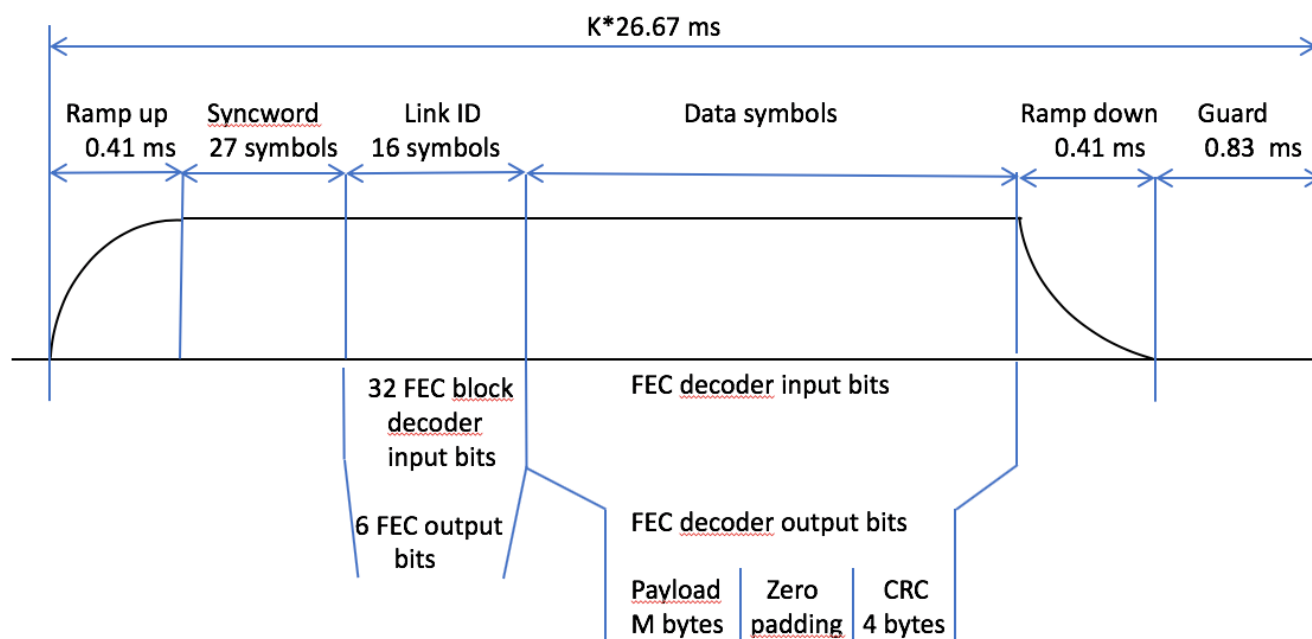
##### **A 1.2.1.3    Slot transmission accuracy at the output**

The slot transmission accuracy should be better than 100 µs peak relative to UTC time reference for ship stations.

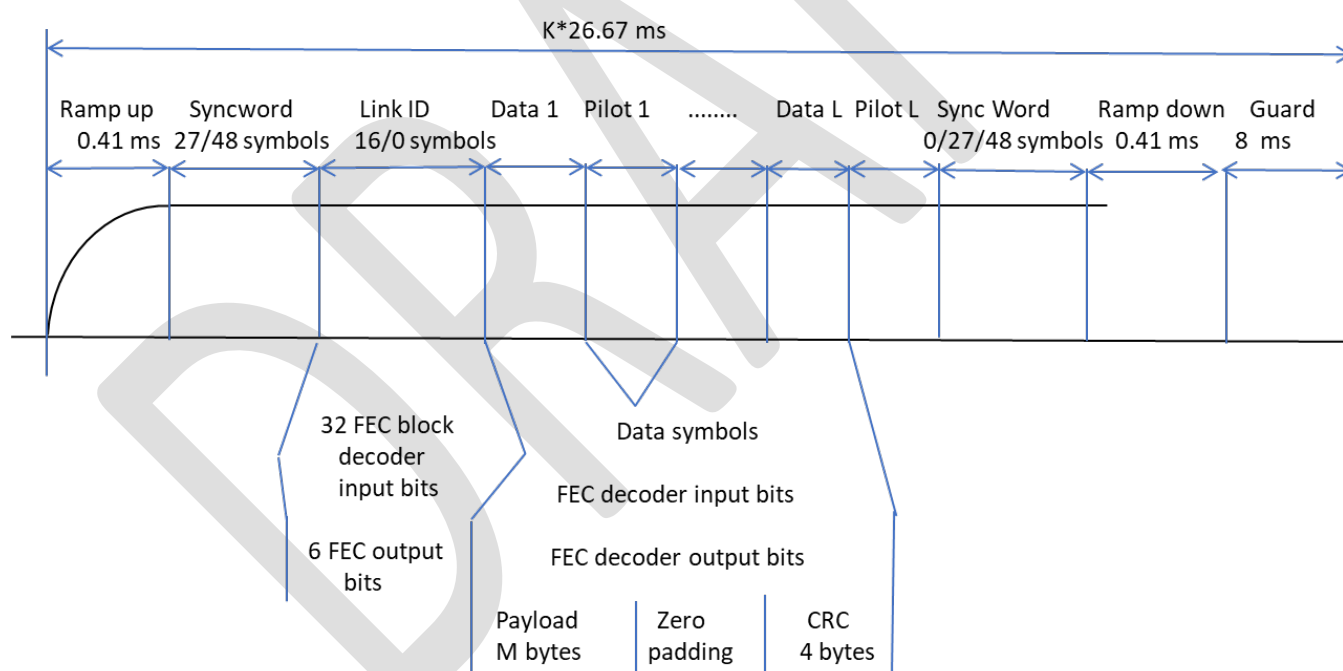
##### **A 1.2.2.    FRAME STRUCTURE**

The system uses the Recommendation ITU-R M.1371 concept of a frame. A frame equals one (1) minute and is divided into 2 250 slots. The slot is a time interval of approximately 26.667 ms ( $60\,000 / 2\,250 \approx 26.667$ ). Access to the data link is, by default, given at the start of a slot. The VDES frame structure is identical and synchronized in time to UTC (as in AIS). The general slot formats are shown in Figure 4 and Figure 5.





**Figure 4 - ASM-TER and VDE-TER General Slot Format**



**Figure 5 - ASM-SAT and VDE-SAT General Slot Format**

### A 1.2.3. BURST TRANSMISSION STRUCTURE

#### A 1.2.3.1 Ramp up

The ramp up from  $-50$  dBc to  $-1.5$  dBc of the power shall have a controlled rise time and occur in approximately  $417 \mu\text{s}$ . A gradual ramp-up period provides important spectral shaping to reduce energy spread outside the desired signal modulation bandwidth, and reduces interference to other users of the current and adjacent channel. The modulation during ramp up is not specified.

### A 1.2.3.2 Training sequence

Table 2 shows the syncwords used for VDES.

**Table 2 – syncwords for VDES**

| Usage   | Symbol size | Sequence  | Type  |
|---------|-------------|---|---|
| ASM-TER | 27          | 1 1111100110101 0000011001010                     | 1+ Barker13+ inverted Barker13                  |
| VDE-TER |             |   |   |
| ASM-SAT | 27          | 010001010010010000000110011                       | Best autocorrelation for differential detection |
| VDE-SAT |             |   |   |
| VDE-SAT | 48          | 00010001111001101100000101011101101011011 1101000 |   |

The Double Barker sequence used for ASM-TER and VDE-TER allows for detection of the 2 correlation peaks and the 13 bit known noise in between. Furthermore, the correlation peak size indicates frequency offset.

### A 1.2.3.3 Bit mapping for training sequence

For training the following mapping applies:

- 1 maps to  $\pi/4$  QPSK (1 1) (see Figure 11)
- 0 maps to  $\pi/4$  QPSK (0 0)

For  $\pi/4$  QPSK bit mapping, see A 1.2.9.

### A 1.2.3.4 Link ID

The Link ID defines the channel configurations. The Link ID is used to index the table of channel configurations, see Table 8, Table 9, Table 10, Table 11 and Table 12.

The Link ID follows the training sequence for transmissions, see Figure 4 and Figure 5, and uses  $\pi/4$  QPSK bit mapping, see A 1.2.9. Note that not all burst transmission structures utilize the Link ID, refer to Table 8, Table 9, Table 10, Table 11 and Table 12.

The Link ID consists of 6 bits (D0, D1, D2, D3, D4, D5) encoded into a sequence of 32 bits using biorthogonal (32,6) code. The code is a first order Reed-Muller code with generator matrix:

**Table 3 Reed-Muller Generator Matrix**

| Generator Matrix                                |
|---|
| 10 00 00 10 11 10 10 01 11 10 10 01 10 01 01 10 |
| 01 00 00 01 11 01 01 01 11 01 01 01 01 01 01 01 |
| 00 10 00 11 10 11 00 11 00 11 00 11 00 11 00 11 |
| 00 01 00 11 00 00 11 11 10 00 11 11 00 00 11 11 |
| 00 00 10 00 01 11 11 11 00 00 00 00 11 11 11 11 |
| 00 00 01 00 00 00 00 00 01 11 11 11 11 11 11 11 |

The code shall be bit scrambled using the scrambling word 11000010111000101000111001001111. This results in the Link ID coding of Table 4.

**Table 4 - Link ID code words for VDES**



| Link ID | Bit-scrambled code word                         | Link ID | Bit-scrambled code word                         |
|---------|---|---------|---|
| 0       | 11 00 00 10 11 10 00 10 10 00 11 10 01 00 11 11 | 32      | 01 00 00 00 00 00 10 11 01 10 01 11 11 01 10 01 |
| 1       | 11 00 01 10 11 10 00 10 11 11 00 01 10 11 00 00 | 33      | 01 00 01 00 00 00 10 11 00 01 10 00 00 10 01 10 |
| 2       | 11 00 10 10 10 01 11 01 10 00 11 10 10 11 00 00 | 34      | 01 00 10 00 01 11 01 00 01 10 01 11 00 10 01 10 |
| 3       | 11 00 11 10 10 01 11 01 11 11 00 01 01 00 11 11 | 35      | 01 00 11 00 01 11 01 00 00 01 10 00 11 01 10 01 |
| 4       | 11 01 00 01 11 10 11 01 00 00 00 01 01 00 00 00 | 36      | 01 01 00 11 00 00 01 00 11 10 10 00 11 01 01 10 |
| 5       | 11 01 01 01 11 10 11 01 01 11 11 10 10 11 11 11 | 37      | 01 01 01 11 00 00 01 00 10 01 01 11 00 10 10 01 |
| 6       | 11 01 10 01 10 01 00 10 00 00 00 01 10 11 11 11 | 38      | 01 01 10 11 01 11 10 11 11 10 10 00 00 10 10 01 |
| 7       | 11 01 11 01 10 01 00 10 01 11 11 10 01 00 00 00 | 39      | 01 01 11 11 01 11 10 11 10 01 01 11 11 01 01 10 |
| 8       | 11 10 00 01 01 01 00 01 10 11 11 01 01 11 11 00 | 40      | 01 10 00 11 10 11 10 00 01 01 01 00 11 10 10 10 |
| 9       | 11 10 01 01 01 01 00 01 11 00 00 10 10 00 00 11 | 41      | 01 10 01 11 10 11 10 00 00 10 10 11 00 01 01 01 |
| 10      | 11 10 10 01 00 10 11 10 10 11 11 01 10 00 00 11 | 42      | 01 10 10 11 11 00 01 11 01 01 01 00 00 01 01 01 |
| 11      | 11 10 11 01 00 10 11 10 11 00 00 10 01 11 11 00 | 43      | 01 10 11 11 11 00 01 11 00 10 10 11 11 10 10 10 |
| 12      | 11 11 00 10 01 01 11 10 00 11 00 10 01 11 00 11 | 44      | 01 11 00 00 10 11 01 11 11 01 10 11 11 10 01 01 |
| 13      | 11 11 01 10 01 01 11 10 01 00 11 01 10 00 11 00 | 45      | 01 11 01 00 10 11 01 11 10 10 01 00 00 01 10 10 |
| 14      | 11 11 10 10 00 10 00 01 00 11 00 10 10 00 11 00 | 46      | 01 11 10 00 11 00 10 00 11 01 10 11 00 01 10 10 |
| 15      | 11 11 11 10 00 10 00 01 01 00 11 01 01 11 00 11 | 47      | 01 11 11 00 11 00 10 00 10 10 01 00 11 10 01 01 |
| 16      | 10 00 00 11 00 11 01 11 01 01 10 11 00 01 10 10 | 48      | 00 00 00 01 11 01 11 10 10 11 00 10 10 00 11 00 |
| 17      | 10 00 01 11 00 11 01 11 00 10 01 00 11 10 01 01 | 49      | 00 00 01 01 11 01 11 10 11 00 11 01 01 11 00 11 |
| 18      | 10 00 10 11 01 00 10 00 01 01 10 11 11 10 01 01 | 50      | 00 00 10 01 10 10 00 01 10 11 00 10 01 11 00 11 |
| 19      | 10 00 11 11 01 00 10 00 00 10 01 00 00 01 10 10 | 51      | 00 00 11 01 10 10 00 01 11 00 11 01 10 00 11 00 |
| 20      | 10 01 00 00 00 11 10 00 11 01 01 00 00 01 01 01 | 52      | 00 01 00 10 11 01 00 01 00 11 11 01 10 00 00 11 |
| 21      | 10 01 01 00 00 11 10 00 10 10 10 11 11 10 10 10 | 53      | 00 01 01 10 11 01 00 01 01 00 00 10 01 11 11 00 |
| 22      | 10 01 10 00 01 00 01 11 11 01 01 00 11 10 10 10 | 54      | 00 01 10 10 10 10 11 10 00 11 11 01 01 11 11 00 |
| 23      | 10 01 11 00 01 00 01 11 10 10 10 11 00 01 01 01 | 55      | 00 01 11 10 10 10 11 10 01 00 00 10 10 00 00 11 |
| 24      | 10 10 00 00 10 00 01 00 01 10 10 00 00 10 10 01 | 56      | 00 10 00 10 01 10 11 01 10 00 00 01 10 11 11 11 |
| 25      | 10 10 01 00 10 00 01 00 00 01 01 11 11 01 01 10 | 57      | 00 10 01 10 01 10 11 01 11 11 11 10 01 00 00 00 |
| 26      | 10 10 10 00 11 11 10 11 01 10 10 00 11 01 01 10 | 58      | 00 10 10 10 00 01 00 10 10 00 00 01 01 00 00 00 |
| 27      | 10 10 11 00 11 11 10 11 00 01 01 11 00 10 10 01 | 59      | 00 10 11 10 00 01 00 10 11 11 11 10 10 11 11 11 |
| 28      | 10 11 00 11 10 00 10 11 11 10 01 11 00 10 01 10 | 60      | 00 11 00 01 01 10 00 10 00 00 11 10 10 11 00 00 |
| 29      | 10 11 01 11 10 00 10 11 10 01 10 00 11 01 10 01 | 61      | 00 11 01 01 01 10 00 10 01 11 00 01 01 00 11 11 |
| 30      | 10 11 10 11 11 11 01 00 11 10 01 11 11 01 10 01 | 62      | 00 11 10 01 00 01 11 01 00 00 11 10 01 00 11 11 |
| 31      | 10 11 11 11 11 11 01 00 10 01 10 00 00 10 01 10 | 63      | 00 11 11 01 00 01 11 01 01 11 00 01 10 11 00 00 |

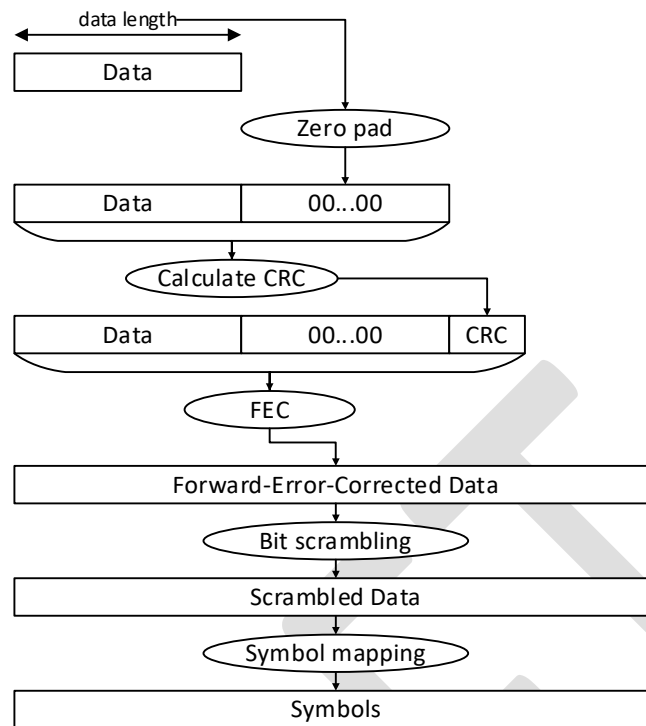
The Link ID is not used by the SAT link.

#### A 1.2.3.5 Data payload with CRC

Input data is processed MSB first.

The data payload with its appended CRC (refer to A 1.2.5) is interleaved (refer to Table 5) encoded (refer to A 1.2.4.1), scrambled (refer A 1.2.6 ) and bit mapped (refer to A 1.2.9).

Unused payload data is zero-filled.



**Figure 6 – Typical order of operations for Symbol Data; if CR=1 FEC is not applied**

#### A 1.2.3.6 Bit scrambling

Scrambling of the user data is required to avoid the power spectral density to be concentrated in the narrow band. Refer to A 1.2.6 for the detailed definition of the scrambler sequence.

#### A 1.2.3.7 Guard time

The guard time consists of the ramp down time from full power to  $-50$  dBc of less than or equal to  $417 \mu\text{s}$ . The remaining time is for delay and jitter.

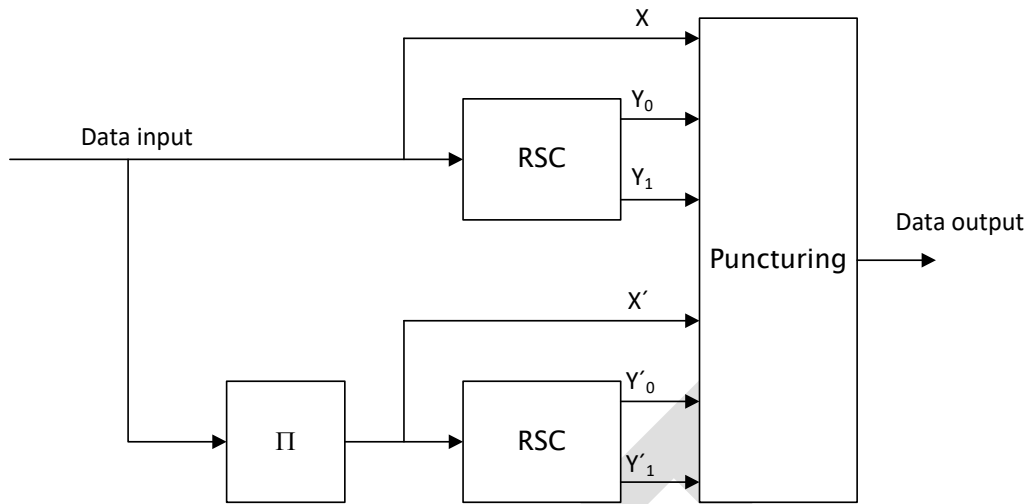
### A 1.2.4. FORWARD ERROR CORRECTION

#### A 1.2.4.1 Encoder Structure

This paragraph defines the general structure of the forward error correction encoder to be used on the satellite and the terrestrial component of the VDES. The overall structure follows the specification in the ETSI EN 302 583 standard [RD-1].

The general encoder structure is depicted in Figure 7. The encoder consists of two recursive systematic convolutional (RSC) encoders concatenated in parallel. Each encoder produces 3 output bits per input bit. The first RSC encoder produces the bits  $X$ ,  $Y_0$  and  $Y_1$ , while the second encoder produces the bits  $X'$ ,  $Y'_0$  and  $Y'_1$ . The  $\pi$  block in Figure 7 represents the interleaving function as described in section A 1.2.4.3.

The first encoder gets as input a word  $\mathbf{u}$  of  $k$  bits, with  $k$ , as specified in A 1.2.4.3. The second encoder input is denoted by  $\mathbf{u}'$  and it is a permuted version of the vector  $\mathbf{u}$ . The input  $\mathbf{u}$  is the data (including padding and CRC), with MSB of each byte first. For example, if the data is  $0x7F$ ,  $0xA5$ , ...  $\mathbf{u}$  will be  $01111111\ 10100101\ \dots$



**Figure 7 - Turbo encoder structure (high-level)**

#### A 1.2.4.2 Constituent codes

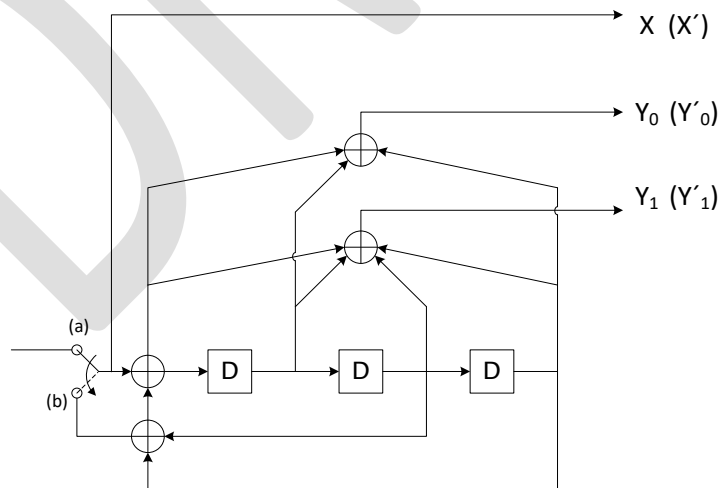
The constituent codes are specified by the transfer function

$$G(D) = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & \frac{n_0(D)}{d(D)} & \frac{n_1(D)}{d(D)} \end{bmatrix}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} n_0(D) &= 1 + D + D^3 \\ n_1(D) &= 1 + D + D^2 + D^3 \\ d(D) &= 1 + D^2 + D^3. \end{aligned}$$

The constituted encoder definition is provided in Figure 8. For the first  $k$  clocks the switch is in position (a), i.e. information is fed into the encoder. For the subsequent 6 clocks, the switch is moved to position (b) to handle the RSC trellis termination. In the first 3 termination clocks, only the RSC 1 (upper branch) is output, while in the subsequent 3 termination clocks, only the output of RSC 2 (lower branch) is provided. The termination is thus given by the sequence of 6 termination bits ( $X, Y_0, Y_1, X', Y'_0, Y'_1$ ) with  $X$  output first.



**Figure 8 - RSC code encoder**

#### A 1.2.4.3 Interleaver definition

The interleaver specification follows [RD-2].

First factorize  $k = k_1 k_2$ , where the parameters  $k_1$  and  $k_2$  depend on the choice of the respective code, where  $k$  is the information block length. Then select prime numbers and puncturing parameters values as given in Table 5.

**Table 5 - Interleaver and Puncturing Parameters for Different Information lengths / code rates**

| LinkID | Nominal code rate | Information length | $k_1 k_2$ | $p_1 p_2 p_3 p_4 p_5 p_6 p_7 p_8$ | Puncturing ID | Tail ID |
|--------|-------------------|--------------------|-----------|-----------------------------------|---------------|---------|
| 4      | 3/4               | 960                | 4 240     | 113 31 59 163 29 181 101 11       | 8             | 8       |
| 5      | 3/4               | 288                | 2 144     | 47 17 233 127 239 139 199 163     | 8             | 8b      |
| 6      | 3/4               | 672                | 2 336     | 37 101 191 149 79 131 229 31      | 8             | 8b      |
| 7      | 3/4               | 1056               | 4 264     | 23 31 167 223 59 113 47 211       | 8             | 8b      |
| 8*     | 1/2               | 192                | 2 96      | 31 37 43 47 53 59 61 67           | 6             | 6       |
| 9*     | 1/2               | 448                | 2 224     | 31 37 43 47 53 59 61 67           | 6             | 6       |
| 10*    | 1/2               | 704                | 2 352     | 31 37 43 47 53 59 61 67           | 6             | 6       |
| 11     | 1/2               | 432                | 2 216     | 127 191 241 5 83 109 107 179      | 6             | 6a      |
| 12     | 3/4               | 972                | 2 486     | 31 37 43 47 53 59 61 67           | 8             | 8       |
| 13     | 3/4               | 1296               | 2 648     | 31 37 43 47 53 59 61 67           | 8             | 8       |
| 14     | 1/2               | 896                | 2 448     | 31 37 43 47 53 59 61 67           | 6             | 6       |
| 15     | 3/4               | 2016               | 4 504     | 31 37 43 47 53 59 61 67           | 8             | 8       |
| 16     | 3/4               | 2688               | 4 672     | 31 37 43 47 53 59 61 67           | 8             | 8       |
| 17     | 1/2               | 1872               | 6 312     | 211 61 227 239 181 79 73 193      | 6             | 6a      |
| 18     | 3/4               | 4032               | 4 1008    | 31 37 43 47 53 59 61 67           | 8             | 8       |
| 19     | 3/4               | 5616               | 16 351    | 137 101 223 41 67 131 61 47       | 8             | 8       |
| 20     | 1/4               | 96                 | 2 48      | 37 83 211 61 107 101 149 167      | 2             | 2a      |
| 21     | 2/3               | 736                | 2 368     | 139 17 241 47 109 11 29 163       | 7a            | 7a      |
| 22     | 2/3               | 3120               | 16 195    | 89 47 239 17 127 59 43 31         | 7a            | 7b      |
| 23     | 2/3               | 4544               | 4 1136    | 31 37 43 47 53 59 61 67           | 7b            | 7b      |
| 24     | 5/6               | 3788*2             | 4 947     | 127 251 227 173 139 149 101 7     | 9             | 9       |
| 25     | 1/2               | 4776               | 12 398    | 31 37 43 47 53 59 61 67           | 6             | 6a      |
| 26     | 1/4               | 5456*7             | 16 341    | 37 41 43 47 53 59 61 67           | 2             | 2a      |
| 27     | 1/2               | 6032*19            | 16 377    | 31 37 43 47 53 59 61 67           | 6             | 6b      |
| 28     | 1/4               | 5280*4             | 16 330    | 31 37 43 47 53 59 61 67           | 2             | 2b      |
| 29     | 1/4               | 5552*6             | 16 347    | 31 37 43 47 53 59 61 67           | 2             | 2c      |
| 30     | 1/4               | 5320*13            | 14 380    | 31 37 43 47 53 59 61 67           | 2             | 2c      |
| 31     | 1/4               | 5328*22            | 16 333    | 31 41 43 47 53 59 61 67           | 2             | 2d      |
| 32     | 1/4               | 312                | 2 156     | 37 79 29 139 151 97 181 157       | 2             | 2e      |
| 33     | 1/3               | 4280               | 8 535     | 59 37 157 167 239 83 163 29       | 4             | 4a      |
| 34     | 1/3               | 4160*2             | 16 260    | 163 157 149 137 197 47 241 251    | 4             | **      |

\*) No previous definitions or simulations results available, but a default configuration suggested.

\*\*) No tail bits.

Table 5 will be extended as different information block lengths are defined.

This FEC will be calculated by first choosing prime numbers  $p_q, q \in (1, \dots, 8)$  as given in Table 5.

The following operations shall be performed for  $s \in (1, \dots, k)$  to obtain the permutation numbers  $\pi(s)$ :

$$m = (s - 1) \bmod 2$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 i &= \text{floor}((s-1)/(2k_2)) \\
 j &= \text{floor}((s-1)/2) - ik_2 \\
 t &= (19i+1) \bmod (k_1/2) \\
 q &= t \bmod 8 + 1 \\
 c &= (p_q j + 21m) \bmod k_2 \\
 \pi(s) &= 2(t + ck_1/2 + 1) - m
 \end{aligned}$$

The permutation numbers shall be interpreted such that the  $s^{\text{th}}$  bit read out after interleaving is the  $\pi(s)^{\text{th}}$  bit of the input information block.

#### A 1.2.4.4 Rate Adaptation

Rate adaptation is obtained by puncturing the encoder output as in § 5.3.1 of [RD-1], as recalled in Table 6 for the first  $k$  clocks, and as in [RD-1].

The puncturing table for the termination part is given in Table 7. The last two rows of Table 7 are not part of [RD-1].

**Table 6 - Puncturing Patterns for Data Bit Periods**

| Punc. Pattern ID | Code Rate | Punc. Pattern (X; Y0; Y1; X'; Y'0; Y'1   X; Y0; Y1; X'; Y'0; Y'1   ...)   |
|------------------|-----------|---|
| 0                | 1/5       | 1;1;1;0;1;1   |
| 1                | 2/9       | 1;0;1;0;1;1   1;1;1;0;1;1   1;1;1;0;0;1   1;1;1;0;1;1   |
| 2                | 1/4       | 1;1;1;0;0;1   1;1;0;0;1;1   |
| 3                | 2/7       | 1;0;1;0;0;1   1;0;1;0;1;1   1;0;1;0;0;1   1;1;1;0;0;1   |
| 4                | 1/3       | 1;1;0;0;1;0   |
| 5                | 2/5       | 1;0;0;0;0;0   1;0;1;0;0;1   0;0;1;0;0;1   1;0;1;0;0;1   1;0;1;0;0;1  <br>0;0;1;0;0;1   1;0;1;0;0;1   1;0;1;0;0;1   0;0;1;0;0;1   1;0;1;0;0;1  <br>1;0;1;0;0;1   0;0;1;0;0;1 |
| 6                | 1/2       | 1;1;0;0;0;0   1;0;0;0;1;0   |
| 7                | 2/3       | 1;0;0;0;0;0   1;0;0;0;0;0   1;0;0;0;0;0   1;0;1;0;0;1   |
| 7a               | 2/3       | 1;0;0;0;0;0   1;0;0;0;0;0   1;0;0;0;0;0   1;1;0;0;1;0   |
| 7b               | 2/3       | 1;0;0;0;0;0   1;1;0;0;0;0   1;0;0;0;0;0   1;0;0;0;1;0   |
| 8                | 3/4       | 1;0;1;0;0;0   1;0;0;0;0;0   1;0;0;0;0;0   1;0;0;0;0;0   1;0;0;0;0;0  <br>1;0;0;0;0;1  |
| 9                | 5/6       | 1;0;0;0;0;0   1;1;0;0;0;0   1;0;0;0;1;0   1;0;0;0;0;0   1;0;0;0;0;0  <br>1;0;0;0;0;0   1;0;0;0;0;0   1;0;0;0;0;0   1;0;0;0;0;0   1;0;0;0;0;0                                |

For each rate, the puncturing table shall be read first from left to right and then from top to bottom.

Within a puncturing pattern, a '0' means that the symbol shall be deleted and a '1' means that a symbol shall be passed. A '2' or a '3' means that two or three copies of the symbol shall be passed. This is relevant for the termination periods. In particular

- For the rate 1/5 turbo code (Punct\_Pat\_ID=0), the tail output symbols for each of the first three tail bit periods shall be XXXY<sub>0</sub>Y<sub>1</sub>, and the tail output symbols for each of the last three tail bit periods shall be X'X'X'Y'Y'Y'.
- For the rate 2/9 turbo code (Punct\_Pat\_ID=1), the tail output symbols for the first and the second output period shall be XXXY<sub>0</sub>Y<sub>1</sub>, for the third output period XXY<sub>0</sub>Y<sub>1</sub>, for the fourth and fifth output period X'X'Y'Y'Y'Y', and for the sixth (last) output period X'X'X'Y'Y'Y'.

- For the rate 1/4 turbo code (Punct\_Pat\_ID=2), the tail output symbols for each of the first three tail bit periods shall be  $XXY_0Y_1$ , and the tail output symbols for each of the last three tail bit periods shall be  $X'X'Y'_0Y'_1$ .

All other code rates shall be processed similar to the given examples above with the exact puncturing patterns to be derived from [RD-1].

The puncturing table for the termination part is given in Table 7. The last rows of the table are introduced in this document to obtain higher rates and are not part of [RD-1].

DRAFT



**Table 7 - Puncturing and Repetition Patterns for Tail Bit Periods (last 6 clocks)**

| Punct. Pattern ID | Code Rate | Punct. / Rep. Pattern (X; Y0; Y1; X'; Y'0; Y'1   X; Y0; Y1; X'; Y'0; Y'1   ...)   |
|-------------------|-----------|---|
| 0                 | 1/5       | 3;1;1;0;0;0   3;1;1;0;0;0   3;1;1;0;0;0   0;0;0;3;1;1   0;0;0;3;1;1   0;0;0;3;1;1 |
| 1                 | 2/9       | 3;1;1;0;0;0   3;1;1;0;0;0   2;1;1;0;0;0   0;0;0;2;1;1   0;0;0;2;1;1   0;0;0;2;1;1 |
| 2                 | 1/4       | 2;1;1;0;0;0   2;1;1;0;0;0   2;1;1;0;0;0   0;0;0;2;1;1   0;0;0;2;1;1   0;0;0;2;1;1 |
| 2a                | 1/4       | 1;1;1;0;0;0   1;1;1;0;0;0   1;1;1;0;0;0   0;0;0;1;1;1   0;0;0;1;1;1   0;0;0;1;1;1 |
| 2b                | 1/4       | 1;1;1;0;0;0   1;1;1;0;0;0   1;1;0;0;0;0   0;0;0;1;1;1   0;0;0;1;1;1   0;0;0;1;1;0 |
| 2c                | 1/4       | 1;1;0;0;0;0   1;1;0;0;0;0   1;1;0;0;0;0   0;0;0;1;1;0   0;0;0;1;1;0   0;0;0;1;1;0 |
| 2d                | 1/4       | 1;1;0;0;0;0   1;0;0;0;0;0   1;0;0;0;0;0   0;0;0;1;1;0   0;0;0;1;0;0   0;0;0;1;0;0 |
| 2e                | 1/4       | 2;1;1;0;0;0   2;1;1;0;0;0   2;1;0;0;0;0   0;0;0;2;1;1   0;0;0;2;1;1   0;0;0;2;0;0 |
| 3                 | 2/7       | 1;1;1;0;0;0   2;1;1;0;0;0   2;1;1;0;0;0   0;0;0;2;1;1   0;0;0;1;1;1   0;0;0;1;1;1 |
| 4                 | 1/3       | 2;1;0;0;0;0   2;1;0;0;0;0   2;1;0;0;0;0   0;0;0;2;1;0   0;0;0;2;1;0   0;0;0;2;1;0 |
| 4a                | 1/3       | 2;1;0;0;0;0   2;1;0;0;0;0   2;0;0;0;0;0   0;0;0;2;1;0   0;0;0;2;1;0   0;0;0;0;1;0 |
| 5                 | 2/5       | 1;1;1;0;0;0   1;1;1;0;0;0   1;0;1;0;0;0   0;0;0;1;1;1   0;0;0;1;1;1   0;0;0;1;0;1 |
| 6                 | 1/2       | 1;1;0;0;0;0   1;1;0;0;0;0   1;1;0;0;0;0   0;0;0;1;1;0   0;0;0;1;1;0   0;0;0;1;1;0 |
| 6a                | 1/2       | 1;1;0;0;0;0   1;1;0;0;0;0   1;0;0;0;0;0   0;0;0;1;1;0   0;0;0;1;1;0   0;0;0;1;0;0 |
| 6b                | 1/2       | 1;1;0;0;0;0   1;0;0;0;0;0   1;0;0;0;0;0   0;0;0;1;1;0   0;0;0;1;0;0   0;0;0;1;0;0 |
| 7                 | 2/3       | 1;0;0;0;0;0   1;0;1;0;0;0   1;0;1;0;0;0   0;0;0;1;0;0   0;0;0;1;0;1   0;0;0;1;0;0 |
| 7a                | 2/3       | 1;1;0;0;0;0   1;0;0;0;0;0   1;0;0;0;0;0   0;0;0;1;1;0   0;0;0;1;0;0   0;0;0;1;0;0 |
| 7b                | 2/3       | 1;1;0;0;0;0   1;1;0;0;0;0   1;1;0;0;0;0   0;0;0;1;1;0   0;0;0;1;1;0   0;0;0;1;1;0 |
| 8                 | 3/4       | 1;0;1;0;0;0   1;0;1;0;0;0   1;0;1;0;0;0   0;0;0;1;0;1   0;0;0;1;0;1   0;0;0;1;0;1 |
| 8a                | 3/4       | 1;0;1;0;0;0   1;0;1;0;0;0   1;0;1;0;0;0   0;0;0;1;0;1   0;0;0;1;0;1   0;0;0;1;0;0 |
| 8b                | 3/4       | 1;0;1;0;0;0   1;0;1;0;0;0   1;0;0;0;0;0   0;0;0;1;0;1   0;0;0;1;0;1   0;0;0;1;0;0 |
| 9                 | 5/6       | 1;1;0;0;0;0   1;0;0;0;0;0   1;0;0;0;0;0   0;0;0;1;1;0   0;0;0;1;0;0   0;0;0;1;0;0 |

For each rate, the puncturing table shall be read first from left to right and then from top to bottom.

#### A 1.2.4.5 DETERMINE THE NUMBER OF FEC DECODER INPUT BITS

Typically, the number of FEC decoder input bits is equal to the FEC decoder output bits divided by the FEC rate. However, one or more of the last bits as given by the puncturing pattern in Table 5 is not received when the

number of FEC decoder output bits divided by the puncturing length is not an integer number. In the following, the number of FEC decoder input and output bits are denoted  $N$  and  $K$  respectively, and the FEC rate is denoted  $r$ .

At the transmitter side, the Turbo encoder typically encodes a block of  $K$  bits into a codeword of  $N$  bits, given by  $N = (1/r) \cdot K$ . Since the output of the Turbo code is punctured, this equality is however only valid when the block length  $K$  is a multiple of the puncturing length  $L_p$ .

In the case when  $K$  is not a multiple of  $L_p$  one must determine the actual number of output bits by examining the puncturing table  $P$  since the exact number of output bits then depends on how the puncturing table is defined.

The Turbo code puncturing table  $P$  has size  $6 \cdot L_p$  as defined in Table 5 and the number of 1's in the table is exactly  $L_p/r$ .

The number of output bits from the Turbo encoder, excluding tail bits, is then given as:

$$\begin{aligned} I &= \lfloor K/L_p \rfloor \\ R &= K \bmod L_p \\ N &= I(L_p/r) + \sum_{j=1}^R \sum_{i=1}^6 P(i, j) \end{aligned}$$

#### A 1.2.5. CRC

A generated CRC check sequence is appended to the last segment of the datagram. A 32 bits CRC-32 check sequence is applied for all waveforms except for the satellite waveform SAT-MCS-1.50-2 (Link ID 20) which applies a 16 bits CRC-16 check sequence. The CRC-32 is calculated with the generator polynomial

$$x^{32} + x^{26} + x^{23} + x^{22} + x^{16} + x^{12} + x^{11} + x^{10} + x^8 + x^7 + x^5 + x^4 + x^2 + x + 1$$

and the CRC-16 with the generator polynomial  $x^{16} + x^{15} + x^2 + 1$ . CRC check sequence generation shall be equivalent to that defined in ITU-T H.222.0, Annex A [RD-5] for CRC-32 and ETSI EN 301 545-2 [RD-6] for CRC-16. The CRC check sequence is the remainder of the division of the initial value+datagram by the generator polynomial and can be effectively calculated by applying a linear feedback shift register. The 32 bits shift register for generating CRC-32 must be set to the initial value 0xFFFF FFFF, and the 16 bits shift register for generating CRC-16 to the initial value 0x0000 (all zero).

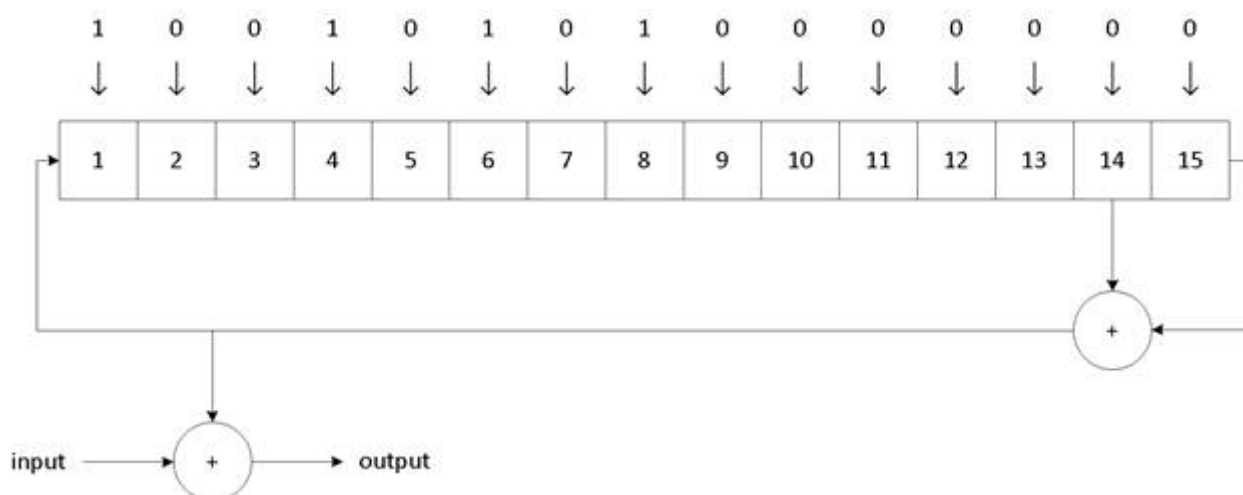
The CRC check sequence is calculated over all fragments of the datagram (including any zero padding) with MSB of each byte processed first, and the resulting CRC check sequence is appended MSB first. In the receiver, the CRC check sequence can be verified by obtaining an all zero result in the linear feedback shift register after processing over the entire data+padding+CRC datagram.

#### A 1.2.6. BIT SCRAMBLING

The bit scrambler shown in Figure 9 uses the polynomial:

$$F(x) = 1 + x^{-14} + x^{-15}$$

and the initialization sequence as indicated in the top of Figure 9. For each transmitted packet, the bit scrambler is re-initialized. The MSB shall be the first output bit.



**Figure 9 - Bit scrambling**

#### **A 1.2.7. MODULATION CODING SCHEMES**

All MCS formats are defined in the Link ID in Table 8, Table 9, Table 10, Table 11 and Table 12 (refer to Figure 4 and Figure 5). The Channel Quality Indicator (CQI) value is used by the Adaptive Coding and Modulation (ACM) mechanism.

**Table 8 - ASM Link ID parameters**

| PL format #                                   | ASM - MCS - 1.16-1     | ASM-MCS-1.16-2 | ASM-MCS-1.16-3 | ASM-MCS-1.16-4 | ASM-MCS-1.16-5 | ASM-MCS-1.16-6 | ASM-MCS-1.16-7 |                  |                  |                   |         |
|---|------------------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|------------------|------------------|-------------------|---------|
| Link ID                                       | 1                      | 2              | 3              | 4 (SAT)        | 5              | 6              | 7              | 8 <sup>(1)</sup> | 9 <sup>(1)</sup> | 10 <sup>(1)</sup> |         |
| Channel BW                                    | 16                     |                |                |                |                |                |                |                  |                  |                   | kHz     |
| Roll off filtering <sup>(2)</sup>             | 0.35                   |                |                |                |                |                |                |                  |                  |                   |         |
| Signal BW                                     | 13.0                   |                |                |                |                |                |                |                  |                  |                   | kHz     |
| Symbol rate                                   | 9.6                    |                |                |                |                |                |                |                  |                  |                   | ksps    |
| PAPR (example)                                | 3.35                   |                |                |                |                |                |                |                  |                  |                   | dB      |
| Output average power                          | 12.5                   |                |                |                |                |                |                |                  |                  |                   | Watt    |
| Burst size                                    | 1                      | 2              | 3              | 3              | 1              | 2              | 3              |                  |                  |                   | slots   |
| Guard time                                    | 0.83                   |                |                | 8              | 0.83           |                |                |                  |                  |                   | ms      |
| Burst duration                                | 25.8                   | 52.5           | 79.2           | 72.0           | 25.8           | 52.5           | 79.2           |                  |                  |                   | ms      |
| Symbols/ burst                                | 248                    | 504            | 760            | 691            | 248            | 504            | 760            |                  |                  |                   | symbols |
| Ramp-up/down                                  | 4/4                    |                |                |                |                |                |                |                  |                  |                   | symbols |
| Ramp-up/down                                  | 0.41/0.41              |                |                |                |                |                |                |                  |                  |                   | ms      |
| Syncword size                                 | 27                     |                |                |                |                |                |                |                  |                  |                   | symbols |
| Syncword modul.                               | PI/4 QPSK (00/11 only) |                |                |                |                |                |                |                  |                  |                   |         |
| Link ID symbols                               | 16                     |                |                |                |                |                |                |                  |                  |                   | symbols |
| Link ID modul.                                | Pi/4 QPSK              |                |                |                |                |                |                |                  |                  |                   |         |
| Net symbols/ burst                            | 197                    | 453            | 709            | 640            | 197            | 453            | 709            |                  |                  |                   | symbols |
| Channel bits                                  | 394                    | 906            | 1418           | 1280           | 394            | 906            | 1418           |                  |                  |                   | bits    |
| Padding+FEC tail <sup>(3)</sup>               | 10+0                   |                |                | 0+11           | 0+10           |                |                |                  |                  |                   | bits    |
| FEC decoder input symbols                     | 192                    | 448            | 704            | 634.5          | 192            | 448            | 704            |                  |                  |                   | symbols |
| FEC decoder input bits                        | 384                    | 896            | 1408           | 1269           | 384            | 896            | 1408           |                  |                  |                   | bits    |
| FEC output bits                               | 384                    | 896            | 1408           | 952            | 288            | 672            | 1056           |                  |                  |                   | bits    |
| FEC output bytes                              | 48                     | 112            | 176            | 119            | 36             | 84             | 132            |                  |                  |                   | bytes   |
| Modul.  | PI/4 QPSK              |                |                |                |                |                |                |                  |                  |                   |         |
| Bits / symbol                                 | 2                      |                |                |                |                |                |                |                  |                  |                   |         |
| FEC rate                                      | 1                      |                |                | 3/4            |                |                |                |                  |                  |                   |         |
| E <sub>s</sub> /N <sub>0</sub> on AWGN        | 11.0                   | 11.0           | 11.0           | 4.5            | 5.3            | 5              | 4.8            |                  |                  |                   | dB      |
| C/(N <sub>0</sub> +I <sub>0</sub> ) threshold | 50.8                   | 50.8           | 50.8           | 44.3           | 45.1           | 44.8           | 44.6           |                  |                  |                   | dBHz    |

<sup>(1)</sup> This link configuration is defined for future use. It is optional and not subject to testing.

<sup>(2)</sup> The baseband shall employ a root raised cosine filter.

<sup>(3)</sup> Given as padding + FEC tail bits, where the tail bits are according to Table 7, refer to C 4.6 Data Structures.

**Table 9 - VDE-TER Link ID parameters**

| PL format #                                   | TER-MCS-1.25           |                   | TER-MCS-3.25      |                   | TER-MCS-5.25      | TER-MCS-1.50      | TER-MCS-3.50      | TER-MCS-5.50      | TER-MCS-1.100 |                   | TER-MCS-3.100     |                   | TER-MCS-5.100 |         |         |
|---|------------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|---------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|---------------|---------|---------|
| Link ID                                       | 11                     | 35 <sup>(4)</sup> | 12 <sup>(1)</sup> | 36 <sup>(4)</sup> | 13 <sup>(1)</sup> | 14 <sup>(1)</sup> | 15 <sup>(1)</sup> | 16 <sup>(1)</sup> | 17            | 37 <sup>(4)</sup> | 18 <sup>(1)</sup> | 38 <sup>(4)</sup> | 19            |         |         |
| Channel BW                                    | 25                     |                   |                   |                   |                   | 50                |                   |                   | 100           |                   |                   |                   |               | kHz     |         |
| Roll off filtering <sup>(2)</sup>             | 0.3                    |                   |                   |                   |                   |                   |                   |                   |               |                   |                   |                   |               |         |         |
| Signal BW                                     | 25.0                   |                   |                   |                   |                   | 49.9              |                   |                   | 99.8          |                   |                   |                   |               | kHz     |         |
| Symbol rate                                   | 19.2                   |                   |                   |                   |                   | 38.4              |                   |                   | 76.8          |                   |                   |                   |               | ksps    |         |
| Modulation                                    | PI/4 QPSK              |                   | 8PSK              |                   | 16 QAM            | PI/4 QPSK         | 8PSK              | 16 QAM            | PI/4 QPSK     |                   | 8PSK              |                   | 16 QAM        |         |         |
| PAPR (example)                                | 3.82                   |                   | 4.4               |                   | 6.7               | 3.82              | 4.4               | 6.7               | 3.82          |                   | 4.4               |                   | 6.7           | dB      |         |
| Output average power                          | 12.5                   |                   | 11                |                   | 6.5               | 12.5              | 11                | 6.5               | 12.5          |                   | 11                |                   | 6.5           | Watt    |         |
| Burst size                                    | 1                      |                   |                   |                   |                   |                   |                   |                   |               |                   |                   |                   |               |         | slot    |
| Guard time                                    | 0.83                   |                   |                   |                   |                   |                   |                   |                   |               |                   |                   |                   |               |         | ms      |
| Burst duration                                | 25.8                   |                   |                   |                   |                   |                   |                   |                   |               |                   |                   |                   |               |         | ms      |
| Symbols/burst                                 | 496                    |                   |                   |                   |                   | 992               |                   |                   | 1984          |                   |                   |                   |               | symbols |         |
| Ramp-up/down                                  | 8/8                    |                   |                   |                   |                   | 16/16             |                   |                   | 32/32         |                   |                   |                   |               | symbols |         |
| Ramp-up/down                                  | 0.41/0.41              |                   |                   |                   |                   |                   |                   |                   |               |                   |                   |                   |               |         | ms      |
| Syncword size                                 | 27                     |                   |                   |                   |                   |                   |                   |                   |               |                   |                   |                   |               |         | symbols |
| Syncword modulation                           | PI/4 QPSK (00/11 only) |                   |                   |                   |                   |                   |                   |                   |               |                   |                   |                   |               |         |         |
| Link ID size                                  | 16 (32,6 block code)   |                   |                   |                   |                   |                   |                   |                   |               |                   |                   |                   |               |         | symbols |
| Link ID modulation                            | PI/4 QPSK              |                   |                   |                   |                   |                   |                   |                   |               |                   |                   |                   |               |         |         |
| Net symbols/burst                             | 437                    |                   |                   |                   |                   | 917               |                   |                   | 1877          |                   |                   |                   |               | symbols |         |
| Channel bits                                  | 874                    |                   | 1311              |                   | 1748              | 1834              | 2751              | 3668              | 3754          |                   | 5631              |                   | 7508          | bits    |         |
| Padding + FEC tail <sup>(3)</sup>             | 0+10                   |                   | 3+12              |                   | 8+12              | 30+12             | 51+12             | 72+12             | 0+10          |                   | 243+12            |                   | 8+12          | bits    |         |
| FEC decoder input symbols                     | 432                    |                   | 432               |                   | 432               | 896               |                   |                   | 1872          |                   | 1792              |                   | 1872          | symbols |         |
| FEC decoder input bits                        | 864                    |                   | 1296              |                   | 1728              | 1792              | 2688              | 3584              | 3744          |                   | 5376              |                   | 7488          | bits    |         |
| FEC output bits                               | 432                    |                   | 972               |                   | 1296              | 896               | 2016              | 2688              | 1872          |                   | 4032              |                   | 5616          | bits    |         |
| FEC output bytes                              | 54                     |                   | 121               |                   | 162               | 112               | 252               | 336               | 234           |                   | 504               |                   | 702           | bytes   |         |
| FEC rate                                      | 1/2                    |                   | 3/4               |                   | 3/4               | 1/2               | 3/4               | 3/4               | 1/2           |                   | 3/4               |                   | 3/4           |         |         |
| E <sub>s</sub> /N <sub>0</sub> on AWGN        | 1.0                    |                   | 7.9               |                   | 10.2              | 1.0               | 7.9               | 10.2              | 1.0           |                   | 7.9               |                   | 10.2          | dB      |         |
| C/(N <sub>0</sub> +I <sub>0</sub> ) threshold | 43.8                   |                   | 50.7              |                   | 53.0              | 46.8              | 53.7              | 56.0              | 49.9          |                   | 56.8              |                   | 59.1          | dBHz    |         |

<sup>(1)</sup> This link configuration is defined for future use. It is optional and not subject to testing.

<sup>(2)</sup> The baseband shall employ a root raised cosine filter.

<sup>(3)</sup> Given as padding + FEC tail bits, where the tail bits are according to Table 7, refer to C 4.6 Data Structures.

<sup>(4)</sup> Not for communications, reserved for ranging applications.

**Table 10 - VDE-SAT UpLink ID parameters**

| PL format                                     | SAT-MCS-1.50-2                   | SAT-MCS-1.50-3       | SAT-MCS-1.50-4 | SAT-MCS-3.50-2    | SAT-MCS-5.50      |         |
|---|----------------------------------|----------------------|----------------|-------------------|-------------------|---------|
| Link ID                                       | 20                               | 21                   | 22             | 23 <sup>(1)</sup> | 24 <sup>(3)</sup> |         |
| Channel bandwidth                             | 50                               |                      |                |                   |                   | kHz     |
| Roll off filtering <sup>(2)</sup>             | 0.25                             |                      |                |                   |                   |         |
| Signal bandwidth                              | 42.0                             |                      |                |                   |                   | kHz     |
| CDMA chiprate                                 | 33.6                             | N/A                  |                |                   |                   | kcps    |
| Spreading Factor                              | 16                               |                      |                |                   |                   | chips   |
| Symbol rate                                   | 2.1                              | 33.6                 |                |                   |                   | ksps    |
| PAPR (example)                                | 0                                | 4.35                 |                | 4.9               | 7.1               | dB      |
| Output average power                          | 12.5                             | 11                   |                | 10                | 6                 | Watt    |
| Burst size                                    | 5                                | 1                    | 3              |                   |                   | slots   |
| Guard time                                    | 8                                |                      |                |                   |                   | ms      |
| Burst duration                                | 125.3                            | 18.7                 | 72.0           |                   |                   | ms      |
| Symbols/burst                                 | 263                              | 627                  | 2419           |                   |                   | symbols |
| Ramp-up/down                                  | 14/14 <sup>(4)</sup>             |                      |                |                   |                   | symbols |
| Ramp-up/down                                  | 0.41/0.41                        |                      |                |                   |                   | ms      |
| Syncword size                                 | 48                               | 27                   |                |                   |                   | symbols |
| Syncword modulation                           | QPSK/CDMA (00/11) <sup>(6)</sup> | PI/4 QPSK (00/11)    |                |                   |                   |         |
| Link ID size                                  | 0                                | 16 (32,6 block code) |                |                   |                   | symbols |
| Link ID modulation                            | N/A                              | PI/4 QPSK            |                |                   |                   |         |
| Pilot symbol distance                         | 17                               | N/A                  |                | 33                |                   | symbols |
| Total pilot symbols                           | 12                               | 0                    |                | 71                |                   | symbols |
| Net symbols/burst                             | 201                              | 556                  | 2348           | 2277              | 2277              | symbols |
| Channel bits                                  | 402                              | 1112                 | 4696           | 6831              | 9108              | bits    |
| Padding + FEC tail <sup>(5)</sup>             | 0+18                             | 0+8                  | 4+12           | 3+12              | 2*(0+8)           | bits    |
| FEC decoder input symbols                     | 192                              | 552                  | 2340           | 2272              | 2277              | symbols |
| FEC decoder input bits                        | 384                              | 1104                 | 4680           | 6816              | 4546*2            | bits    |
| FEC output bits                               | 96                               | 736                  | 3120           | 4544              | 3788*2            | bits    |
| FEC output bytes                              | 12                               | 92                   | 390            | 568               | 947               | bytes   |
| FEC subblock                                  | 1                                | 1                    |                | 1                 | 2                 |         |
| Modulation                                    | QPSK/ CDMA <sup>(6)</sup>        | PI/4 QPSK            |                | 8PSK              | 16QAM             |         |
| FEC rate                                      | 1/4                              | 2/3                  |                |                   | 5/6               |         |
| E <sub>s</sub> /N <sub>0</sub> on AWGN        | -0.9                             | 3.9                  | 3.9            | 8.0               | 12.2              | dB      |
| C/(N <sub>0</sub> +I <sub>0</sub> ) threshold | 32.3                             | 49.2                 | 49.2           | 53.3              | 57.5              | dBHz    |

<sup>(1)</sup> This link configuration is defined for future use. It is optional and not subject to testing.

<sup>(2)</sup> The baseband shall employ a root raised cosine filter.

<sup>(3)</sup> FEC block is split into two sub-blocks in order to avoid very long FEC block.

<sup>(4)</sup> For spread sequence it is 14/14 chips.

<sup>(5)</sup> Given as padding + FEC tail bits, where the tail bits are according to Table 7, refer to C 4.6 Data Structures.

<sup>(6)</sup> The spreading sequence shall be in accordance to section D 2.5.1.

**Table 11 – VDE-SAT DownLink ID Parameters**

| PL format                                     | SAT-MCS-0.50-1 | SAT-MCS-1.50-1     | SAT-MCS-3.50-1 | SAT-MCS-0.100 | SAT-MCS-0.150 |  |  |                 |
|---|----------------|--------------------|----------------|---------------|---------------|--|--|-----------------|
| Link ID                                       | 25             | 26                 | 27             | 28            | 29            |  |  |                 |
| Channel BW                                    | 50             |                    |                | 100           | 150           |  |  | kHz             |
| Roll off filtering <sup>(1)</sup>             | 0.25           |                    |                |               |               |  |  |                 |
| Signal BW                                     | 42.0           |                    |                | 90.0          | 141.0         |  |  | kHz             |
| CDMA chiprate                                 | 33.6           | N/A                |                | 72.0          | 112.8         |  |  | kcps            |
| Spreading Factor                              | 8              |                    |                | 2             |               |  |  | chips           |
| Symbol rate                                   | 4.2            | 33.6               |                | 36.0          | 56.4          |  |  | ksps            |
| Burst size                                    | 90             |                    |                |               |               |  |  | slots           |
| Guard time                                    | 8              |                    |                |               |               |  |  | ms              |
| Burst duration                                | 2392.0         |                    |                |               |               |  |  | ms              |
| Symbols/burst                                 | 10046          | 80371              |                | 86112         | 134908        |  |  | symbols         |
| Ramp-up/down                                  | 14/14          |                    |                | 30/30         | 47/47         |  |  | symbols / chips |
| Ramp-up/down                                  | 0.41/0.41      |                    |                |               |               |  |  | ms              |
| Syncword size                                 | 48             | 27                 |                | 48            |               |  |  | symbols         |
| Number of syncwords                           | 10             | 35                 |                | 32            |               |  |  |                 |
| Total syncword symbols                        | 480            | 945                |                | 1536          |               |  |  | symbols         |
| Syncword distance                             | 1004           | 2268               |                | 2690          | 4214          |  |  | symbols         |
| Syncword modulation                           | BPSK/CDMA      | PI/4 QPSK (00 /11) |                | BPSK/CDMA     |               |  |  |                 |
| Link ID Size                                  | 0 (not used)   |                    |                |               |               |  |  | symbols         |
| Link ID modulation                            | N/A            | N/A                |                | N/A           |               |  |  |                 |
| Pilot distance                                | N/A            | 27                 |                | N/A           |               |  |  | symbols         |
| Total pilots symbols                          | N/A            | 2940               |                | N/A           |               |  |  | symbols         |
| Net symbols/burst                             | 9562           | 76458              | 76458          | 84546         | 133325        |  |  | symbols         |
| Burst stuffing bits                           | 0              | 1                  | 6              | 2             | 5             |  |  | bits            |
| Channel bits                                  | 9562           | 152915             | 229368         | 84544         | 133320        |  |  | bits            |
| Padding + FEC tail***                         | 0+10           | 7*(3+18)           | (0+8)*19       | 4*(0+16)      | 6*(0+12)      |  |  | bits            |
| FEC decoder input symbols                     | 9552           | 76384              | 76406          | 84480         | 133248        |  |  | symbols         |
| FEC decoder input bits*                       | 9552           | 152768             | 229218         | 84480         | 133248        |  |  | bits            |
| FEC output bits                               | 4776           | 7*5456             | 19*6032        | 4*5280        | 6*5552        |  |  | bits            |
| FEC output bytes                              | 597            | 7*682              | 19*754         | 4*660         | 6*694         |  |  | bytes           |
| FEC sub-blocks                                | 1              | 7                  | 19             | 4             | 6             |  |  |                 |
| Modulation                                    | BPSK/CDMA      | PI/4 QPSK          | 8PSK           | BPSK/CDMA     |               |  |  |                 |
| FEC rate                                      | 1/2            | 1/4                | 1/2            | 1/4           |               |  |  |                 |
| E <sub>s</sub> /N <sub>0</sub> on AWGN        | -2.0           | -2.4               | 5.0            | -2.0          |               |  |  | dB              |
| C/(N <sub>0</sub> +I <sub>0</sub> ) threshold | 34.2           | 42.9               | 50.3           | 40.6          | 42.5          |  |  | dBHz            |

<sup>(1)</sup> The baseband shall employ a root raised cosine filter.

<sup>(2)</sup> Given as padding + FEC tail bits, where the tail bits are according to Table 7, refer to C 4.6 Data Structures.

**Table 12 - VDE-SAT DownLink ID Parameters (continued)**

| PL format                                     | SAT-MCS-0.50-2                                   | SAT-MCS-0.50-3 | SAT-MCS-1.50-2     |               |
|---|--|----------------|--------------------|---------------|
| Link ID                                       | 32   | 33             | 34                 |               |
| Channel BW                                    | 50   |                |                    | kHz           |
| Roll off filtering <sup>(1)</sup>             | 0.25   |                |                    |               |
| Signal BW                                     | 42.0   |                |                    | kHz           |
| CDMA chiprate                                 | 33.6   | N/A            |                    | kcps          |
| Spreading Factor                              | 8  |                |                    | chips         |
| Symbol rate                                   | 4.2  | 33.6           |                    | ksps          |
| Burst size                                    | 15   |                |                    | slots         |
| Guard time                                    | 8  |                |                    | ms            |
| Burst duration                                | 392.0  |                |                    | ms            |
| Symbols/burst                                 | 1646   | 13171          |                    | symbols       |
| Ramp-up/down                                  | 14/14  |                |                    | symbols/chips |
| Ramp-up/down                                  | 0.41/0.41  |                |                    | ms            |
| Syncword size                                 | 48   | 48             | 27                 | symbols       |
| Number of syncwords                           | 4  | 6              | 6                  | symbols       |
| Total syncword symbols                        | 192  | 288            | 162                | symbols       |
| Syncword distance                             | 531  | 2619           | 2619               | symbols       |
| Syncword modulation                           | BPSK / CDMA                                      | BPSK           | PI/4-QPSK (00 /11) |               |
| Padding                                       | 32 for future use (not used), set to 0,1,0,1 ... |                |                    | symbols       |
| Pilot distance                                | 8  | N/A            | 27                 | symbols       |
| Total pilots symbols                          | 180  | N/A            | 480                | symbols       |
| Burst symbol duration <sup>(2)</sup>          | 1641   | 13143          | 13122              | symbols       |
| Net symbols/burst                             | 1269   | 12855          | 12480              | symbols       |
| Channel bits                                  | 1269   | 12855          | 24960              | bits          |
| Padding + FEC tail <sup>(3)</sup>             | 0+21   | 0+15           | 0+0                | bits          |
| FEC decoder input symbols                     | 1248   | 12840          | 12480              | symbols       |
| FEC decoder input bits                        | 1248   | 12840          | 2*12480            | bits          |
| FEC output bits                               | 312  | 4280           | 2*4160             | bits          |
| FEC output bytes                              | 39   | 535            | 1040               | bytes         |
| FEC sub-blocks                                | 1  | 1              | 2                  |               |
| Modulation                                    | BPSK/CDMA  | BPSK           | PI/4 QPSK          |               |
| FEC rate                                      | 1/4  | 1/3            | 1/3                |               |
| E <sub>s</sub> /N <sub>0</sub> on AWGN        | -4.5   | -3.6           | -0.6               | dB            |
| C/(N <sub>0</sub> +I <sub>0</sub> ) threshold | 31.6   | 41.7           | 44.7               | dBHz          |

<sup>(1)</sup> The baseband shall employ a root raised cosine filter.

<sup>(2)</sup> Burst symbol duration is number of symbols from syncword preamble to syncword postamble, disregarding ramping symbols.

<sup>(3)</sup> Given as padding + FEC tail bits, where the tail bits are according to Table 7, refer to C 4.6 Data Structures.



#### A 1.2.8. CHANNEL QUALITY INDICATOR

A receiving station will report a Channel Quality Indicator (CQI) in the relevant response messages to provide feedback on the quality of received transmissions. The receiving station shall estimate the CQI parameters based on a signal to noise plus interference ratio estimate, SNIR, given in dB. The SNIR is equivalent to  $E_s/N_0$  on AWGN, when no interference. The CQI parameter is a positive integer value that occupies one byte, ranging from 0 to 255. The relationship between the estimated SNIR and the CQI is given by

$$CQI = 4 \cdot (10 + SNIR) = 40 + 4 \cdot SNIR$$

The SNIR estimate and hence the CQI parameter is independent of the channel BW, and the carrier to noise plus interference ratio estimate,  $C/(N_0+I_0)$ , as given in Annex A, is related to SNIR by

$$C/(N_0+I_0) = SNIR + 10 \cdot \log_{10}(R_s)$$

where  $R_s$  denotes the symbol rate. An estimated SNIR value less than -10.0dB shall result in a minimum CQI value of 0, and a SNIR larger 53.75dB shall result in CQI=255. The precision of the CQI parameter is 0.25dB, but the actual accuracy is also dependent on the variance of the SNIR estimate. The CQI accuracy will thus depend on the SNIR working point, the length of the burst waveform, type of modulation and estimation method.

The SNIR can be estimated based on averaging the noise power of demodulated symbol, found by squaring the deviating distance from nominal symbol locations. The signal power is known in advance, provided that an automatic gain control loop is implemented. Such an estimation approach can be performed on known symbols (syncwords and pilot symbols), but also on unknown symbols based on symbol location decision. Another possible method for estimating the SNIR can be based on BER, counting the error corrected by the FEC Turbo coder.

When a response message relates to multiple received transmissions, the average CQI will be calculated and reported.

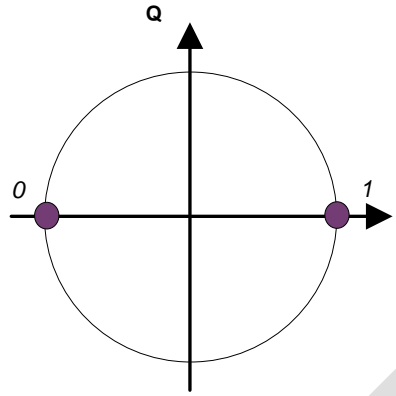
#### A 1.2.9. BIT MAPPING

The bit mappings used throughout the Annexes are shown in Figure 10, Figure 11, Figure 12, Figure 13.

The first output from the bit scrambler is mapped to the MSB of the first symbol, the second bit to the next bit in the symbol, and so on until the LSB of the symbol has been filled, then mapping continues in the next symbol. If more bits are needed to complete the last symbol, 0 shall be used. The initial state of the alternating  $\pi/4$  QPSK bit mapping is defined such that the first symbol of the training sequence is mapped to the constellation defined by points  $\{(1+j)/\sqrt{2}, (-1+j)/\sqrt{2}, (-1-j)/\sqrt{2}, (1-j)/\sqrt{2}\}$  (shown in green in Figure 11); the next symbol is mapped to the constellation defined by points  $\{1+0j, 0+j, -1+0j, 0-j\}$  (shown in purple in Figure 11); the third symbol is mapped to the same constellation as the first symbol; and so on. If the modulation of the following transmission is also  $\pi/4$  QPSK, then the first symbol should be mapped to the constellation defined by points  $\{1+0j, 0+j, -1+0j, 0-j\}$  (shown in purple in Figure 11).

The modulation accuracy requirements for BPSK are:

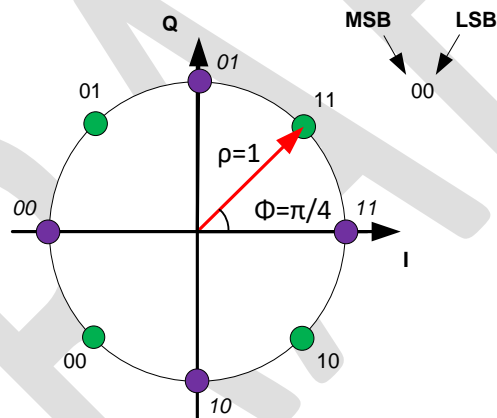
- (1) The RMS error vector in any burst shall be less than 0.15
- (2) The peak error vector magnitude shall be less than 0.45 for any symbol



**Figure 10 – Bit Mapping for BPSK**

The modulation accuracy requirements for  $\pi/4$  QPSK are:

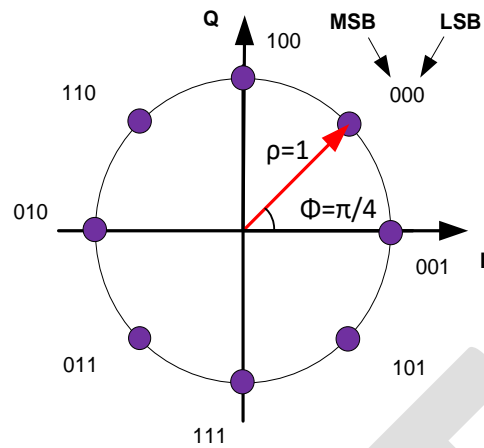
- (1) The RMS error vector in any burst shall be less than 0.1
- (2) The peak error vector magnitude shall be less than 0.3 for any symbol



**Figure 11 - Bit Mapping for  $\pi/4$  QPSK**

The modulation accuracy requirements for 8PSK are:

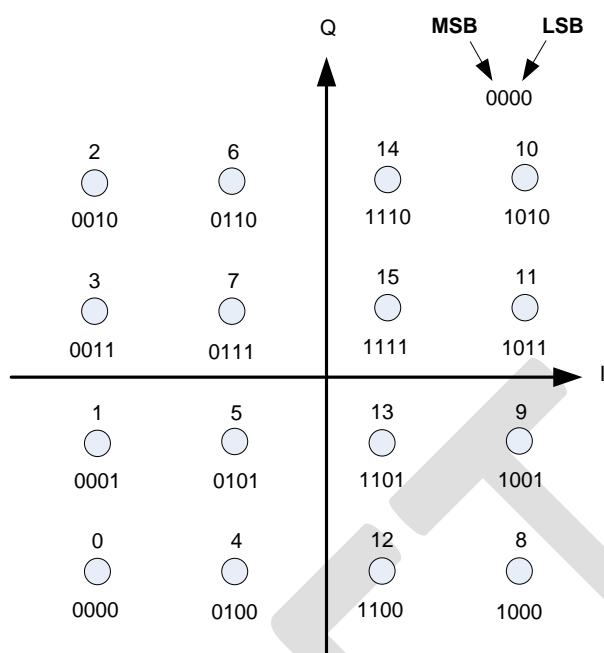
- (1) The RMS error vector in any burst shall be less than 0.07
- (2) The peak error vector magnitude shall be less than 0.22 for any symbol



***Figure 12 - 8PSK symbol to bit mapping***

The modulation accuracy requirements for 16QAM are:

- (1) The RMS error vector in any burst shall be less than 0.04
- (2) The peak error vector magnitude shall be less than 0.1 for any symbol



**Figure 13 - Bit Mapping for 16QAM**

#### A 1.2.10. ANTENNA GAIN FOR VDES SHIP STATIONS

Existing ship AIS antennas may be used for VDES. An antenna with a gain of 2 dBi at zero degrees elevation is assumed.

#### A 1.2.11. NOISE AND INTERFERENCE LEVEL

The noise floor is a function of many sources such as vessel electronics, other radio equipment, power supplies, etc., and sensitivity is also reduced by RF cabling losses and the LNA noise figure. Table 13 presents assumed representative values for the receiver noise figure.

**Table 13 - Ship receiver noise figure calculations**

|                             |        |     |
|-----------------------------|--------|-----|
| Antenna noise temperature*  | 245.0  | K   |
| LNA noise figure            | 6.0    | dB  |
| LNA noise temperature       | 813.8  | K   |
| Feed loss noise temp at LNA | 0.0    | K   |
| Antenna noise temp at LNA   | 245.0  | K   |
| System noise temp at LNA    | 1058.8 | K   |
| System noise temp at LNA    | 30.2   | dBK |

\* The galactic background antenna noise temperature is 245 K at 160 MHz [RD-4].

#### A 1.2.12. TRANSMITTER REQUIREMENTS FOR VDES

##### A 1.2.12.1 Ship Stations Transmitter power

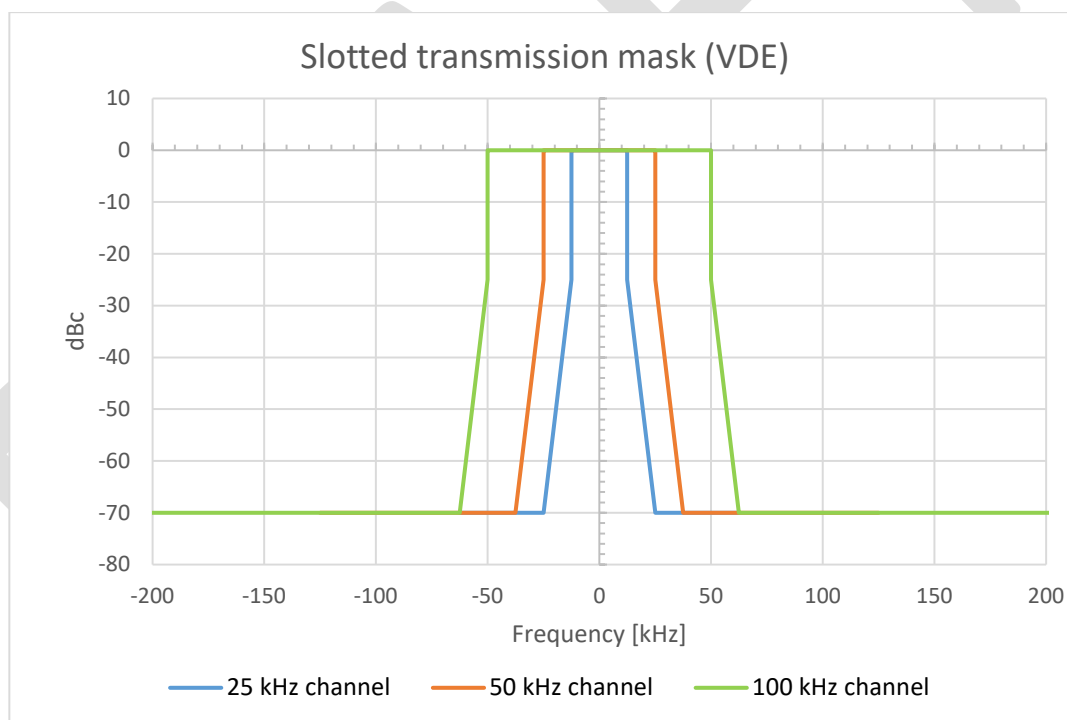
**Except for Annex B,**

Table 14 defines the requirements for VDES ship station transmitters, for the transmit spectrum mask, see Figure 14. The resolution bandwidth for the mask measurement is 300Hz.

**Table 14 - Transmitter parameters**

| Transmitter parameters | Requirements | Condition |
|------------------------|--------------|-----------|
|------------------------|--------------|-----------|

|   |   |                                  |
|---|---|----------------------------------|
| Frequency error                                   | 1.5 ppm   | normal                           |
| Frequency error                                   | 3 ppm   | extreme                          |
| Average transmit power capability                 | The minimum average power should be according to Table 9, Table 10.<br>The power tolerance is $\pm 1.5$ dB in normal, $+2/-6$ dB in extreme conditions.   | Conducted                        |
| Maximum adjacent power levels for 25 kHz channel  | $\Delta f_c < \pm 12.5$ kHz: 0 dBc <sup>1</sup><br>$\pm 12.5$ kHz $< \Delta f_c < \pm 25$ kHz: below the straight line between -25 dBc at $\pm 12.5$ kHz and -70 dBc at $\pm 25$ kHz<br>$\pm 25$ kHz $< \Delta f_c < \pm 62.5$ kHz: -70 dBc |                                  |
| Maximum adjacent power levels for 50 kHz channel  | $\Delta f_c < \pm 25$ kHz: 0 dBc<br>$\pm 25$ kHz $< \Delta f_c < \pm 37.5$ kHz: below the straight line between -25 dBc at $\pm 25$ kHz and -70 dBc at $\pm 37.5$ kHz<br>$\pm 37.5$ kHz $< \Delta f_c < \pm 125$ kHz: -70 dBc               |                                  |
| Maximum adjacent power levels for 100 kHz channel | $\Delta f_c < \pm 50$ kHz: 0 dBc<br>$\pm 50$ kHz $< \Delta f_c < \pm 62.5$ kHz: below the straight line between -25 dBc at $\pm 50$ kHz and -70 dBc at $\pm 62.5$ kHz<br>$\pm 62.5$ kHz $< \Delta f_c < \pm 250$ kHz: -70 dBc               |                                  |
| Spurious emissions                                | -36 dBm<br>-30 dBm  | 9 kHz to 1 GHz<br>1 GHz to 4 GHz |



**Figure 14 - Slotted Transmission Mask (VDE)**

#### A 1.2.12.2 Ship e.i.r.p. vs. elevation angle

The minimum ship e.i.r.p. vs elevation angle is shown in Table 14. There are no minimum e.i.r.p. requirements above 80 degrees elevation. Table 15 is based on a linear transmitter meeting the maximum Adjacent Channel Interference levels defined in Table 14. For saturated operation, the e.i.r.p. shall be 3 dB higher.

**Table 15 - Minimum ship e.i.r.p. vs. elevation angle**

<sup>1</sup> where 0 dBc is average.

| Ship elevation angle | Ship antenna gain | Minimum ship e.i.r.p. with 6 W transmitter |
|----------------------|-------------------|--|
| degrees              | dBi               | dBW  |
| 0                    | 3                 | 10.8                                       |
| 10                   | 3                 | 10.8                                       |
| 20                   | 2.5               | 10.3                                       |
| 30                   | 1                 | 8.8  |
| 40                   | 0                 | 7.8  |
| 50                   | -1.5              | 6.3  |
| 60                   | -3                | 4.8  |
| 70                   | -4                | 3.8  |
| 80                   | -10               | -2.2                                       |
| 90                   | -20               | -12.2                                      |

### A 1.2.12.3 Shutdown procedure

An automatic transmitter hardware shutdown procedure and indication should be provided in case a transmitter continues to transmit for more than 2 s. This shutdown procedure should be independent of software control.

### A 1.2.12.4 Safety precautions

The VDES installation, when operating, should not be damaged by the effects of open circuited or short-circuited antenna terminals.

## A 1.3. LINK LAYER

This layer ensures reliable transmission of data between ships, ship and shore, and ship and satellite. This layer will further be responsible for packing data into messages and providing access to the data transfer medium using TDMA techniques.

### A 1.3.1. TDMA SYNCHRONIZATION

TDMA synchronization is achieved using an algorithm as described below.

The TDMA receiving process should not depend on slot boundaries.

Synchronization other than UTC direct may be provided by the AIS system.

### A 1.3.2. COORDINATED UNIVERSAL TIME DIRECT

A station, which may acquire timing directly from coordinated universal time (UTC) source having the required accuracy.

### A 1.3.3. COORDINATED UNIVERSAL TIME INDIRECT

A station, which is unable to get direct access to UTC, but has access to the AIS system timing, should get its synchronization from the AIS system.

## **ANNEX B**    **TECHNICAL CHARACTERISTICS OF THE APPLICATION SPECIFIC MESSAGE (ASM) CHANNELS FOR THE VDES IN THE VHF MARITIME MOBILE BAND**

### **B 1. INTRODUCTION**

This section describes those elements of the ASM that are unique to ASM operation. It contains a description of the different protocols according to the OSI layer model and recommends implementation details for each layer. For those elements that are common, the cross reference into Annex A is provided.

The system should use TDMA techniques in a synchronized manner.

This Annex describes the characteristics of the TDMA access schemes which include random access TDMA (RATDMA), Multiple Incremental TDMA (MITDMA), fixed access TDMA (FATDMA), techniques. Slot carrier sense TDMA (SCTDMA) may be implemented as an option. The behaviour should be in accordance with Recommendation ITU-R M.1371-5 Annex 7.

#### **B 1.1. OSI LAYERS**

Refer to Annex A.

##### **B 1.1.1. PHYSICAL LAYER**

Convert digital transmission packet to  $\pi/4$  Quadrature Phase-Shift Keying (QPSK) signal to modulate transmitter.

##### **B 1.1.2. LINK LAYER**

The link layer is divided into three sub-layers with the following tasks.

###### **B 1.1.2.1 Link management entity**

This sub layer has the following functions:

- Assemble ASM message bits
- Order the ASM message bits into 8-bit byte for assembly of transmission packet.

###### **B 1.1.2.2 Data link services**

This sub layer has the following functions:

- Calculate CRC of the ASM message bits (see A 1.2.5)
- Append CRC to ASM message to complete creation of transmission packet contents.
- Complete assembly of transmission packet.

###### **B 1.1.2.3 Media access control**

Media access control provides a method for granting access to the data transfer to the VHF data link (VDL). The method used is a TDMA scheme using a common time reference.

##### **B 1.1.3. NETWORK LAYER**

The network layer is responsible for the management of priority assignments of messages, distribution of transmission packets between channels, and data link congestion resolution.

##### **B 1.1.4. TRANSPORT LAYER**

The transport layer is responsible for converting data into transmission packets of correct size and sequencing of data packets.

## B 2. PHYSICAL LAYER

### B 2.1. PARAMETERS

#### B 2.1.1. GENERAL

The physical layer is responsible for the transfer of a bit-stream from an originator, out on to the data link. The performance requirements for the physical layer are summarized in Table 23, Table 24 and Table 25.

The low setting and the high setting for each parameter is independent of the other parameters.

**Table 16 - Minimum required time division multiple access transmitter characteristics**

| Parameter name  | Units | Low setting | High setting |
|---|-------|-------------|--------------|
| Channel spacing (encoded according to RR Appendix 18 with footnotes) <sup>(1)</sup> | kHz   | 25          | 25           |
| ASM 1 <sup>(1)</sup>  | MHz   | 161.950     | 161.950      |
| ASM 2 <sup>(1)</sup>  | MHz   | 162.000     | 162.000      |
| Average transmit output power   | W     | 1           | 12.5         |

<sup>(1)</sup> See Recommendation ITU-R M.1084, Annex 4.

#### B 2.1.2. TRANSMISSION MEDIA

Data transmissions are made in the VHF maritime mobile band. Data transmissions should use ASM 1 and/or ASM 2 channels.

#### B 2.1.3. MULTI-CHANNEL OPERATION

The ASM station should be capable of receiving on two parallel channels and transmitting on two independent channels. Two separate TDMA receiving processes should be used to simultaneously receive on two independent frequency channels. One TDMA transmitter may be used to enable TDMA transmissions on one or two independent frequency channels.

ASM transmission should alternate between the two ASM channels

MITDMA linked transmissions should be on the same channel.

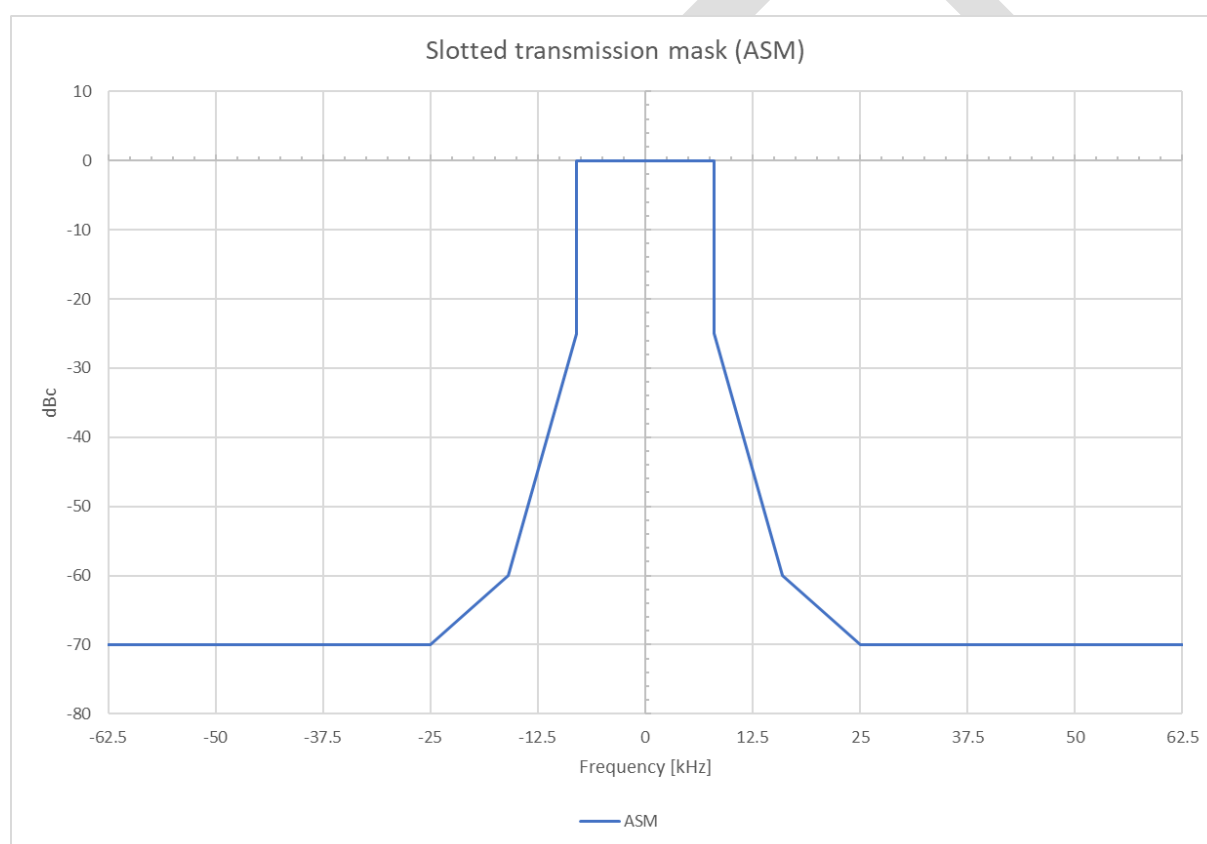
### B 2.2. TRANSCEIVER CHARACTERISTICS

The transceiver should perform in accordance with the characteristics set forth herein, see Table 17 and Figure 15. The resolution bandwidth for the mask measurement is 300Hz.



**Table 17 - Minimum required time division multiple access transmitter characteristics**

|                                   | Requirements  |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| Carrier power error               | $\pm 1.5$ dB  |
| Carrier frequency error (normal)  | 1.5 ppm   |
| Carrier frequency error (extreme) | 3.0 ppm   |
| Slotted modulation mask           | $\Delta f_c < \pm 8$ kHz: 0 dBc <sup>2</sup><br>$\pm 8$ kHz $< \Delta f_c < \pm 16$ kHz: below the straight line between<br>-25 dBc at $\pm 8$ kHz and -60 dBc at $\pm 16$ kHz<br>$\pm 16$ kHz $< \Delta f_c < \pm 25$ kHz: below the straight line between<br>-60 dBc at $\pm 16$ kHz and -70 dBc at $\pm 25$ kHz<br>$\pm 25$ kHz $< \Delta f_c < \pm 62.5$ kHz: -70 dBc |
| Spurious emissions                | -36 dBm: 9 kHz ... 1 GHz<br>-30 dBm: 1 GHz ... 4 GHz  |



**Figure 15 - ASM Slotted modulation mask**

<sup>2</sup> where 0 dBc is 12.5W average power for higher power and 1W average power for low power.

**Table 18 - Minimum required time division multiple access receiver characteristics without FEC**

| Receiver parameters                  | Requirements   |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| Sensitivity                          | 20% PER @ -107 dBm                                   |
| Error behaviour at high input levels | 1% PER @ -77 dBm<br>1% PER @ -7 dBm                  |
| Adjacent channel selectivity         | 20% PER @ 70 dB                                      |
| Spurious response rejection          | 20% PER @ 70 dB                                      |
| Intermodulation response rejection   | 20% PER @ 71 dB                                      |
| Spurious emissions                   | -57 dBm (9 kHz to 1 GHz)<br>-47 dBm (1 GHz to 4 GHz) |
| Blocking                             | 20% PER @ 86 dB                                      |

### B 2.3. MODULATION SCHEME

The base modulation is defined by the Link ID, see Table 8.

For the modulation bit mapping, see Annex A.

### B 2.4. DATA TRANSMISSION BIT RATE

The transmission bit rate should be 19.2 kbit/s  $\pm 10$  ppm for  $\pi/4$  QPSK.

### B 2.5. FRAME STRUCTURE

For the generic definition of the frame structure, see Annex A.

### B 2.6. SIGNAL INFORMATION

Signal information selects the modulation scheme and coding according to the Link ID defined in Table 8.

### B 2.7. FORWARD ERROR CORRECTION AND BIT SCRAMBLING

When forward error correction is used, it will be used as defined in Annex A. Interleaving and bit scrambling are used, as defined by the FEC designated in the signal information. In the event of no FEC, bit scrambling according to Annex A shall be implemented.

### B 2.8. TRANSMITTER TRANSIENT RESPONSE

The time taken to switch from transmit to receive conditions, and receive to transmit conditions, should not exceed the transmit ramp up and ramp down, see Annex A 1.2.3.1. It should be possible to receive a message from the slot directly after or before own transmission.

The equipment should not be able to transmit during channel switching operation.

### B 2.9. TRANSMITTER POWER

The power level is determined by the link management entity (LME) of the link layer.

Provision should be made for two levels of nominal power (high power, low power) as required by some applications. The default operation of the ASM station should be on the high nominal power level.

The nominal levels for the two power settings should be 1 W (average power) and 12.5 W (average power); tolerance should be within  $\pm 1.5$  dB.

## B 3. LINK LAYER

---

The link layer specifies how data is packaged in order to apply error detection and correction to the data transfer. The link layer is divided into three sub-layers.

### B 3.1. SUB-LAYER 1 – MEDIUM ACCESS CONTROL

---

The medium access control (MAC) sub layer provides a method for granting access to the data transfer medium, i.e. the VHF data link. The access scheme is TDMA using a common time reference.

### B 3.2. TDMA SYNCHRONIZATION

---

TDMA synchronization is achieved using an algorithm as described in section A 1.3.1.

### B 3.3. TIME DIVISION

---

The slot and frame are as defined in Annex A. Access to the data link is, by default, given at the start of a slot. The frame start and stop coincide with the UTC minute, when UTC is unavailable the AIS system may provide the frame synchronization.

#### B 3.3.1. SLOT PHASE AND FRAME SYNCHRONIZATION

Slot phase synchronization and frame synchronization is done by using information from UTC or from the AIS system.

#### B 3.3.2. SLOT PHASE SYNCHRONIZATION

Slot phase synchronization is the method whereby the slot boundary is synchronized with a high level of synchronization stability, thereby ensuring no message boundary overlapping or corruption of messages.

#### B 3.3.3. FRAME SYNCHRONIZATION

Frame synchronization is the method whereby the current slot number for the frame is known.

#### B 3.3.4. SLOT IDENTIFICATION

Each slot is identified by its index (0-2249). Slot zero (0) should be defined as the start of the frame.

#### B 3.3.5. SLOT ACCESS

The transmitter should begin transmission by turning on the RF power at slot start.

The transmitter should be turned off after the last bit of the transmission packet has left the transmitting unit. This event must occur within the slots allocated for own transmission. The slot access is performed as described in Annex A 1.2.2.

#### B 3.3.6. SLOT STATE

Each slot on an ASM channel can be in one of the following states:

- **Free:**
  - not allocated externally on AIS and ASM channels
  - no addressed message to own station expected on VDE channel
- **Available:**
  - externally allocated by an AIS which may be considered as a candidate slot. The available AIS slots are as defined in Recommendation ITU-R M.1371 and must only be taken from the most distant station(s) within the SI.

- **Unavailable:**
  - internal allocation by own station for the purpose of own transmission
  - externally allocated by an AIS which should not be considered as a candidate slot for the following reasons:
    - SOTDMA slot timeout = 0
    - FATDMA allocated slot
  - externally allocated by an ASM station on the intended ASM channel
  - externally allocated by an ASM station on the other ASM channel for an addressed message to own station.
  - slots allocated to own station for VDE reception

### **B 3.4. SUB LAYER 2 – DATA LINK SERVICE**

The data link service (DLS) sub layer provides methods for:

- data link activation and release;
- data transfer; or
- error detection, correction and control.

#### **B 3.4.1. DATA LINK ACTIVATION AND RELEASE**

Based on the MAC sub layer the DLS will listen, activate or release the data link. A slot, marked as free or externally allocated, indicates that own equipment should be in receive mode and listen for other data link users.

#### **B 3.4.2. DATA TRANSFER**

Data transfer should use a bit-oriented protocol and should be in accordance with this standard.

#### **B 3.4.3. PACKET FORMAT**

Data is transferred using the generic transmission packet as defined in Figure 4 and Figure 5.

The packet should be sent from left to right. The training sequence is being used to synchronize the VDES receiver.

##### **B 3.4.3.1 Summary of the transmission packet**

The data packet is defined in Table 19.

The ASM channel configurations are defined by Link ID table, Table 8.

**Table 19 - Packet symbol structure for  $\pi/4$  QPSK modulation scheme**

|                      | symbols   | Description  |
|----------------------|---|--|
| Ramp up              | 4   |  |
| Training sequence    | 27  | Necessary for synchronization  |
| Link ID              | 16  | Decoded from (32,6) biorthogonal code;<br>ASM channel configurations as defined in Link ID table;<br>Note that the Link ID will identify how many slots make up the message. |
| Data                 | 1 slot: 176<br>2 slot: 432<br>3 slot: 688<br>SAT: 616 | The symbol count and the information bits varies according to coding rate as defined by the Link ID field  |
| CRC                  | 16  | The CRC only includes the data field   |
| FEC termination bits | 6   | Set to zero when not used  |
| Ramp Down            | 4   | Distance delay and jitter  |
| Guard Time           | TER: 7<br>SAT: 79                                     | Distance delay and jitter  |
| Total                | 1 slot: 256<br>2 slot: 512<br>3 slot: 768             |  |

#### B 3.4.3.2 Transmission timing

The modulation may be applied during the ramp up period, but it shall not be considered as part of the training sequence

#### B 3.4.3.3 Long transmission packets

A station may occupy a maximum of 3 consecutive slots, as defined by the Link ID, for one (1) continuous transmission. Only a single application of the overhead (ramp up, training sequence, flags, CRC, guard time) is required for a long transmission packet.

#### B 3.4.4. ERROR DETECTION AND CONTROL

Error detection is accomplished using a CRC polynomial as described in Annex A.

#### B 3.4.5. FORWARD ERROR CORRECTION

Forward error correction should be handled as described in A 1.2.4, and specified by the Link ID see Table 8.

### B 3.5. SUB LAYER 3 – LINK MANAGEMENT ENTITY

The LME controls the operation of the DLS, MAC and the physical layer.

#### B 3.5.1. ACCESS TO THE DATA LINK

There should be different access schemes for controlling access to the data transfer medium. The application and mode of operation determine the access scheme to be used.

The access schemes are MITDMA, RATDMA, and FATDMA.

#### B 3.5.2. COOPERATION ON THE DATA LINK

The access schemes operate continuously, and in parallel, on the same physical data link. They all conform to the rules set up by the TDMA. The ASM system must give priority to the AIS system when accessing the physical data link.

#### B 3.5.3. CANDIDATE SLOTS

Slots, used for transmission, are selected from *candidate slots* in the selection interval (SI) which is defined as 235 slots.

The selection process uses received data from AIS, ASM and VDE where these functions are co-located. Functions not part of a co-located station are not considered by the candidate slot selection process of the station.

There should be, at minimum, a set of eight candidate slots to choose from.

- Rule 1: The candidate slots are primarily selected from slots that are Free.

If the candidate slot set contains less than eight slots, additional candidate slots can be obtained by using the following rules and order (rule 2 followed by rule 3):

- Rule 2: Available slot on one AIS channel and Free on the other channels.
- Rule 3: Available slot on both AIS channels (AIS1 and AIS2) and Free on the other channels.
- Rule 4: A slot not expecting a message of interest for own station on the other ASM channel and available on both AIS channels

When selecting candidates for messages longer than one (1) slot, a candidate slot should be the first slot in a consecutive block of slots that conform to the selection criteria stated above.

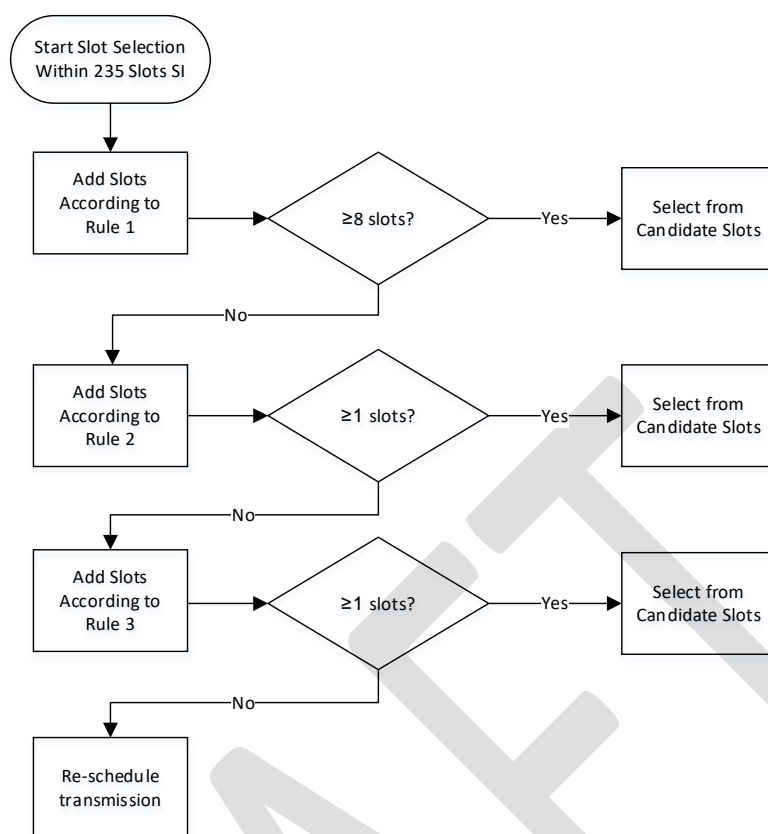
If the station cannot find a sufficient number of candidate slots, the station should not transmit and should re-schedule the transmission.

The candidate slot selection process also has to consider time periods reserved for the reception of the bulletin board.

The purpose of maintaining a minimum of eight candidate slots within the same probability of being used for transmission is to provide high probability of access to the link.

Note that the AIS and VDE channels need only to be considered when ASM and the other system share the same antenna. Or when there is not sufficient isolation to support independent operations such that the AIS station will still meet its receiver performance requirements.

Figure 16 shows a flowchart representation of the selection algorithm.



**Figure 16 – ASM candidate slot selection algorithm**

#### B 3.5.4. MODES OF OPERATION

There should be two modes of operation, autonomous and assigned. The default mode should be autonomous.

#### B 3.5.5. AUTONOMOUS

A station operating autonomously should determine its own schedule for transmission. The station should automatically resolve scheduling conflicts with other stations.

#### B 3.5.6. ASSIGNED

A station operating in the assigned mode takes into account the transmission schedule of the assigning message when determining when it should transmit.

#### B 3.5.7. CHANNEL ACCESS SCHEMES

The access schemes, as defined below, should coexist and operate simultaneously on the TDMA channel. The access scheme FATDMA is as defined in Recommendation ITU-R M.1371.

##### B 3.5.7.1 Multiple incremental time division multiple access (MITDMA)

The MITDMA access schemes allows a station to pre-announce transmission slots that the station will use in the future. A single MITDMA transmission may be used to schedule up to three future transmissions with each transmission occupying up to 3 slots.

##### B 3.5.7.2 Multiple incremental time division multiple access algorithm (MITDMA)

MITDMA is a method of chaining slot allocations together for the purpose of transmitting messages. The first transmission within a MITDMA chain will be a single slot transmission using RATDMA access. Further transmissions will be allocated by the MITDMA communication state.

Receiving stations should mark these slot allocations as unavailable.

MITDMA may chain up to 15 transmissions together in a single frame. See section B 5.4.

### B 3.5.7.3 Random access time division multiple access (RATDMA)

RATDMA is used when a station needs to allocate a slot, which has not been pre-announced. This is generally done for the first transmission slot during MITDMA chain, or for messages of a non-repeatable character.

#### B 3.5.7.4 Random access time division multiple access algorithm

The RATDMA access scheme should use a probability persistent (p-persistent) algorithm as described in this paragraph (see Table 20).

When a candidate slot is selected, the station randomly selects a probability value (LME.RTP1) between 0 and 100. This value should be compared with the current probability for transmission (LME.RTP2). If LME.RTP1 is equal to, or less than LME.RTP2, transmission should occur in the candidate slot. If not, LME.RTP2 should be incremented with a probability increment (LME.RTPI) and the station should wait for the next candidate slot in the frame.

The SI for RATDMA should be 225 time slots, which is equivalent to 6 s. The candidate slot set should be chosen within the SI, so that the transmission occurs within 6 s.

Each time that a candidate slot is entered, the p-persistent algorithm is applied. If the algorithm determines that a transmission shall be inhibited, then the parameter LME.RTCSC is decremented by one and LME.RTA is incremented by one.

LME.RTCSC can also be decremented as a result of another station allocating a slot in the candidate set. If  $LME.RTCSC + LME.RTA < 8$  then the candidate set shall be complemented with a new slot within the range of the current slot and LME.RTES following the slot selection criteria.

#### B 3.5.7.5 Random access time division multiple access parameters

The following parameters (Table 20) are used to control the RATDMA scheduling:

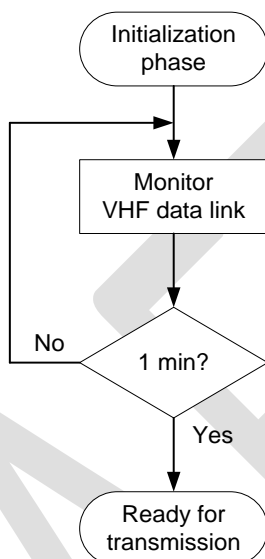
**Table 20 - RATDMA Parameters**

| Symbol | Name                   | Description  | Minimum | Maximum |
|--------|------------------------|--|---------|---------|
| RTCSC  | Candidate slot counter | The number of slots currently available in the candidate set.<br>NOTE 1 – The initial value is always 8 or more (see section B 3.5.3). However, during the cycle of the p-persistent algorithm the value may be reduced below 8                              | 1       | 225     |
| RTES   | End Slot               | Defined as the slot number of the last slot in the initial SI, which is 133 slots ahead  | 0       | 2249    |
| RTPS   | Start probability      | Each time a new message is due for transmission, LME.RTP2 should be set equal to LME.RTPS. LME.RTPS shall be equal to $100/LME.RTCSC$ .<br>NOTE 2 – LME.RTCSC is set to 6 or more initially. Therefore LME.RTPS has a maximum value of $\sim 16$ ( $100/6$ ) | 0       | 16      |
| RTP1   | Derived probability    | Calculated probability for transmission in the next candidate slot. It should be less than or equal to LME.RTP2 for transmission to occur, and it should be randomly selected for each transmission attempt  | 0       | 100     |
| RTP2   | Current probability    | The current probability that a transmission will occur in the next candidate slot  | RTPS    | 100     |
| RTA    | Number of attempts     | Initial value set to 0. This value is incremented by one each time the p-persistent algorithm determines that a transmission shall not occur   | 0       | 224     |
| RTPI   | Probability Increment  | Each time the algorithm determines that transmission should not occur, LME.RTP2 should be incremented with LME.RTPI. LME.RTPI shall be equal to $(100 - LME.RTP2)/LME.RTCSC$   | 1       | 16      |



### B 3.5.7.6 Network access and entry of a new data stream

At power on, a station should monitor the TDMA channels for one (1) minute to determine channel activity, other participating member IDs, current slot assignments and reported positions of other users, and possible existence of base stations, as shown in Figure 17. During this time, a dynamic directory of all members operating in the system should be established. A frame map should be constructed, which reflects TDMA channel activity. After one (1) minute has elapsed, the station may be available to transmit ASM messages according to its own schedule.



**Figure 17 - Network Access for MITDMA and RATDMA**

### B 3.5.7.7 RATDMA channel access

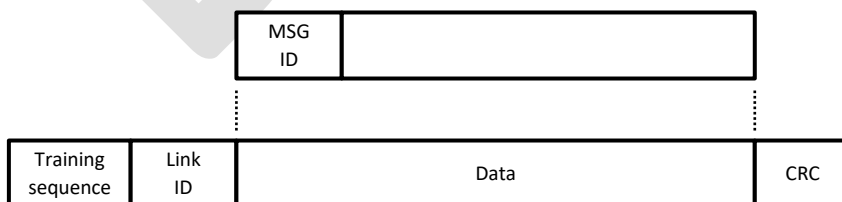
When the ASM station needs to transmit a single ASM message which is not repeated periodically, it should use RATDMA access.

### B 3.5.7.8 MITDMA channel access

When the ASM station needs to transmit a block of ASM messages, or if it needs to transmit ASM message periodically, it should use MITDMA access.

### B 3.5.8. MESSAGE STRUCTURE

The messages should have the following structure shown in Figure 18 inside the data portion of a data packet.



**Figure 18 - Message Structure**

Each message is described using a table with parameter fields listed from top to bottom. Each parameter field is defined with the most significant bit first.

Parameter fields containing sub-fields (e.g. communication state) are defined in separate tables with sub-fields listed top to bottom, with the most significant bit first within each sub-field.

#### B 3.5.8.1 Message identification

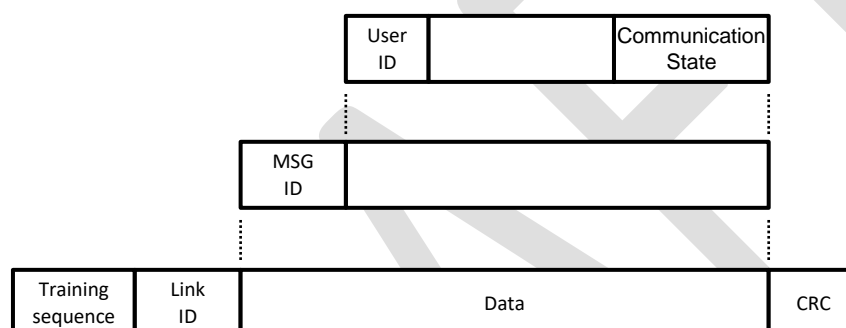
The message ID should be 4 bits long and should have a range of 0 – 15. The message ID should identify the message type.

#### B 3.5.8.2 User identification

The user ID should be a unique identifier and is 32 bits long. All ASM messages will contain the user identifier to identify the source of the transmission.

#### B 3.5.8.3 Incremental time division multiple access message structure

The MITDMA message structure is shown in Figure 19.



***Figure 19 - MITDMA Message Structure***

#### B 3.5.8.4 Multiple Incremental time division multiple access communication state

The communication state provides the information used by the slot allocation algorithm in the MITDMA concept. The MITDMA communication state is structured as shown in Table 21.

**Table 21 - MITDMA communication state parameters**

| Parameter   | Number of bits | Description   | Minimum | Maximum       |
|---|----------------|---|---------|---------------|
| Transmit block counter  | 4              | A decrementing counter used to indicate how many transmissions are left to transmit within the chain<br>A value of 1 indicates this is the last transmission within the chain<br>A value of 0 indicates a recurring transmission. | 0       | 15            |
| Block Identifier  | 4              | This identifier uniquely identifies the block of data within the transmit chain. This identifier also maps to the acknowledgment for addressed messages.  | 0       | 15            |
| Slot Increment 1  | 8              | Offset to the next slot to be used, referenced to the current transmission start slot.<br>A value of 0 indicates no additional slot allocations   | 20      | 255           |
| Number of Slots 1   | 2              | Indicates the number of consecutive slots, which are allocated, starting at the slot increment<br>A value of 0 indicates the 8 bits from Slot Increment 1 become the MSB for the Slot Increment 2                                 | 0       | 3             |
| Slot Increment 2  | 8              | Offset to the next slot to be used, referenced to the slot specified by slot increment 1 (or current transmission slot if the Number of Slots 1 is set to 0)<br>A value of 0 indicates no additional slot allocations             | 20      | 255<br>13500* |
| Number of Slots 2   | 2              | Indicates the number of consecutive slots, which are allocated, starting at the slot increment  | 1       | 3             |
| Slot Increment 3  | 8              | Offset to the next slot to be used, referenced to the slot specified by Slot Increment 2  | 20      | 255           |
| Number of Slots 3   | 2              | Indicates the number of consecutive slots, which are allocated, starting at the slot increment  | 1       | 3             |
| Total bits  | 38             |   |         |               |
| *) When combining Slot Increment 1 and Slot Increment 2 as a 16 bit field. This value should not exceed 6 frames. The combining of these values should only be done for recurring period broadcast transmissions. |                |   |         |               |

## B 4. NETWORK LAYER

The network layer should be used for:

- Establishing and maintaining channel connections
- Management and priority assignments of messages
- Distribution of transmission packets between channels
- Data link congestion resolution.

### B 4.1. MULTI-CHANNEL OPERATIONS

Two frequencies have been designated in RR Appendix 18 for ASM transmissions. These frequencies are:

- ASM1 (161.950 MHz)
- ASM2 (162.000 MHz)

Channel access is performed independently on each of the two channels. Generally, ASM transmission should alternate between the two channels when available.

Terrestrial transmissions of acknowledgements to addressed messages should be done on the channel as the initial message was received.

Chained transmissions using MITDMA shall all be done on the same channel.

### B 4.2. MANAGEMENT OF PRIORITY ASSIGNMENT FOR MESSAGES

ASM messages support message priority. The priority of the message is determined by the PI interface. The messages are serviced in order of priority. Messages with the same priority are dealt with in a FIFO order.

### B 4.3. DATA LINK CONGESTION RESOLUTION

As the data link becomes loaded, the availability of transmission slots will reduce. When the data link is loaded to such a level as reception of ASM message's is jeopardized, measures should be taken to reduce the loading.

ASM channel loading shall be measured independently per channel over a window of the past 2250 slots (1 Minute).

The amount of ASM transmissions on a specific channel shall be adopted to the channel loading on that channel.

The maximum number of slots allocated by one station on one channel shall not exceed 50 slots over a period of one minute (2.2% duty cycle), excluding up to 22 slots available for use for retransmission of addressed data. No more than three re-transmission attempts of the same data shall be made.

#### B 4.3.1. MANDATORY QUIET TIMES

After the completion of a singular Non-MITDMA ASM channel transmission or a complete MITDMA transmission block chain, the ASM station shall wait for a specific time before additional transmission can be scheduled. This time is referred to as Quiet Time. The Selection Interval for finding candidate transmission slots starts after the Quiet Time.

For a singular transmission, Quiet Time shall per default be one second per timeslot.

For an MITDMA linked transmission chain, the Quiet Time is a function of the number of transmission slots within that chain. The Quiet Time shall be increased by one second per time slot used in the transmission chain.

The Quiet Time shall be increased with a multiplier, depending on channel load (Table 22).

**Table 22 - Quiet Time Multiplier**

| Channel load   | <10% | 10%-30% | 30%< |
|--|------|---------|------|
| Multiplier   | 1    | 2       | 3    |
| Quiet Time [seconds] = Transmission slots * Multiplier |      |         |      |

## B 5. TRANSPORT LAYER

The transport layer is responsible for:

- converting data into transmission packets of correct size;
- sequencing of data packets;
- interfacing protocol to upper layers.

### B 5.1. DEFINITION OF TRANSMISSION PACKET

A transmission packet is an internal representation of some information which can ultimately be communicated to external systems. The transmission packet is dimensioned so that it conforms to the rules of data transfer. Transmission packets are fixed block sizes on slot boundaries with a maximum of 3 consecutive slots. When data does completely fill the block, then padding bits with the value of 0 should be added to complete the required block size.

### B 5.2. ASM IDENTIFIER

Addressed and broadcast binary messages should contain a 16-bit application identifier (Table 23)

**Table 23 - ASM identifier parameters**

| Bit  | Description  |
|------|--|
| 15-6 | Designated area code (DAC). This code is based on the maritime identification digits (MID). Exceptions are 0 (test) and 1 (international). Although the length is 10 bits, the DAC codes equal to or above 1 000 are reserved for future use |
| 5-0  | Function identifier. The meaning should be determined by the authority which is responsible for the area given in the designated area code   |

Whereas the application identifier allows for regional applications, the application identifier should have the following special values for international compatibility.

### B 5.3. TRANSMISSION PACKETS

#### B 5.3.1. ADDRESSED MESSAGES

Addressed messages are point to point communications between VDES stations. Addressed messages may require an acknowledgment. When an acknowledgement is required and not received, the VDES stations may retransmit the message up to 3 times.

#### B 5.3.2. BROADCAST MESSAGES

A broadcast message lacks a destination identifier ID. Therefore, receiving stations should not acknowledge a broadcast message.

#### B 5.3.3. CONVERSION TO PRESENTATION INTERFACE MESSAGES

Each received transmission packet should be converted to a corresponding presentation interface message and presented in the order they were received regardless of message category. Applications utilizing the presentation interface should be responsible for their own sequencing numbering scheme, as required. For a mobile station, addressed messages should not be output to the presentation interface, if Destination ID (unique identifier) is different to the ID of own station (own unique identifier).

#### B 5.3.4. CONVERSION OF DATA INTO TRANSMISSION PACKETS

The transport layer should convert data, received from the presentation interface into transmission packets. If the data exceeds the maximum limit, then a negative acknowledgement should be returned on the PI

### B 5.4. MITDMA ACCESS

When the length of the data requires more than 3 consecutive slots, then the data should be divided up into sub-groups of 3 slot packets and MITDMA should be used to chain the transmissions together. A total of 15 MITDMA transmissions may be chained together. If the data provided by the PI exceeds this limit, a negative acknowledgment should be provided on the PI.

If data transmissions are repetitive in nature, and have a transmit interval less than 2 frames (4 500 slots), then MITDMA should be used to maintain the link.

If multiple messages are queued for transmission, then MITDMA should be used to allocate slots for the additional messages.

When using MITDMA for addressed messages, the MITDMA will provide the return slot for the message acknowledgment as specified in Slot Increment 3 during block identifier 2, 1 or 0.

#### B 5.4.1. MITDMA ACCESS EXAMPLE

An MITDMA access example is shown in Figure 20. The first transmission (Tx 1) of a MITDMA chain is always a single slot transmission.

Determine the candidate slots for the Tx 1. Apply the RATDMA algorithm until the transmit criteria is meet.

Before transmitting at Tx 1, determine the candidate slots for up to three additional transmissions. Randomly select the transmit slots from the candidate slot lists. Calculate the offsets for these future transmissions. This information is provided in the MITDMA communication state. Slot Increment 1 reserves Tx 2, Slot Increment 2 reserves Tx 3, and Slot Increment 3 reserves Tx 4.

Before transmitting at Tx 2, determine the candidate slots for the next transmission, e.g. Tx 5. Randomly select a transmit slot from the candidate slot list. This information is provided in the MITDMA communication state. Slot Increment 1 reserves Tx 3, Slot Increment 2 reserves Tx 4, and Slot Increment 3 reserves Tx 5.

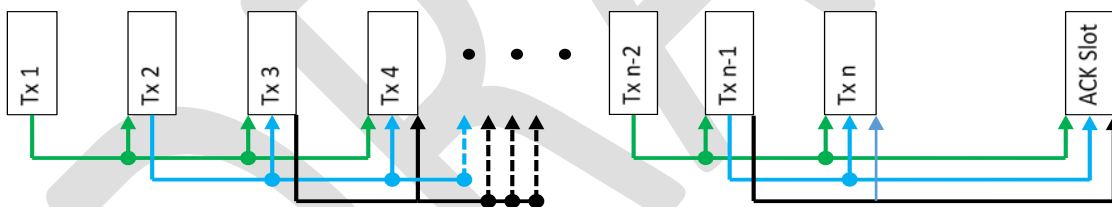
If this is a broadcast message, then starting at Tx n-2, the unused Slot Increments are set to 0. If this is an addressed message, then the following process happens.

At Tx n-2, determine the candidate slots for the acknowledgment message. Randomly select the acknowledgment slot from the candidate slot list. Calculate the offset for the ACK Slot. This information is provided in the MITDMA communication state. Slot Increment 1 reserves the Tx n-1, Slot Increment 2 reserves the Tx n, and Slot Increment 3 reserves the ACK Slot.

At Tx n-1 a new offset is calculated for the ACK Slot. This information is provided in the MITDMA communication state. Slot Increment 1 reserves the Tx n, Slot Increment 2 reserves the ACK Slot, and Slot Increment 3 is set to 0.

At Tx n a new offset is calculated for the ACK Slot. This information is provided in the MITDMA communication state. Slot Increment 1 reserves the ACK Slot, Slot Increment 2 and 3 are set to 0.

At the ACK Slot, the receiving station transmits the acknowledgment message with the ACK/NACK Mask field set to indicate the success or failure of the MITDMA transmission chain. If one or more of the blocks failed during the transmission of the chain, then the transmitting station should re-transmit the failed block(s). When starting the re-transmission of the failed MITDMA block(s), Block 1 (the single slot RATDMA transmission) is always sent first.



**Figure 20 - MITDMA Access Example**

To use MITDMA to transmit a periodic broadcast, the “Transmit Block Counter” field of the MITDMA communication state is set to 0. The “Number Slot 1” field of the MITDMA communication state is set to 0 to allow “Slot Increment 1” and “Slot Increment 2” fields to be combined into a 16-bit value. A slot increment can now be set to a value which has a maximum range of 360 seconds (6 minutes).

## B 6. PACKET STRUCTURE

The ASM transmission packets are used to transport data from one ASM station to another. There are multiple types of packet definitions which use different address modes and channel access schemes. The packet structures are defined by the message identifier.

### B 6.1. SLOT TRANSMISSION STRUCTURE

The generic slot transmission structure is defined in Table 24.

**Table 24 – Slot transmission structure**

| Parameter  | Number of bits  | Descriptions  |
|--|---|---|
| Ramp up  | 8   | 417 us  |
| Training sequence                                | 54  | Necessary for synchronization   |
| Link ID  | 32  | Six information bits decoded from (32,6) biorthogonal code<br>ASM channel configurations as defined in Link ID, see Table 8.<br>Note that the Link ID will identify how many slots make up the message. |
| Data payload including padding<br>(no FEC / FEC) | 1 slot: 352 / 256<br>2 slot: 864 / 640<br>3 slot: 1376 / 1024<br>SAT: N/A / 920 | The symbol count and the information bits varies according to coding rate as defined by the Link ID field   |
| CRC  | 32  | The CRC is calculated over the data payload including padding   |
| FEC  | TER: 10<br>SAT: 11  | Set to zero when not used   |
| Ramp Down  | 8   | 417 us  |
| Guard Time                                       | TER: 16<br>SAT: 154   | Distance delay TER .083 ms<br>Distance delay SAT 8.02 ms  |
| Total  | 1 slot: 512<br>2 slot: 1024<br>3 slot: 1536                                     |   |

## B 6.2. MESSAGE SUMMARY

The defined message types are summarized Table 25.

**Table 25 – Message Summary**

| Message ID | Name                                   | Description  | Access scheme              | Communication State |
|------------|--|--|----------------------------|---------------------|
| 0          | Broadcast AIS ASM Message              | Encapsulated AIS ASM messages  | RATDMA                     | none                |
| 1          | Scheduled Broadcast Message            | Broadcast data using communication state   | FATDMA<br>RATDMA<br>MITDMA | MITDMA              |
| 2          | Broadcast Message                      | Broadcast data with no communication state   | FATDMA<br>RATDMA           | none                |
| 3          | Scheduled Individual Addressed Message | Individual addressed data with communication state. Requires acknowledgement   | FATDMA<br>RATDMA<br>MITDMA | MITDMA              |
| 4          | Individual Addressed Message           | Individual addressed data with no communication state. Requires acknowledgement  | FATDMA<br>RATDMA           | none                |
| 5          | Acknowledgment Message                 | This message is used to provide and acknowledgment for one or more addressed messages  | FATDMA<br>RATDMA<br>MITDMA | none                |
| 6          | Geographical Multicast Message         | Addressed to a group of stations defined by their geographical location with no communication state. No acknowledgment required. | FATDMA<br>RATDMA           | none                |

## B 6.3. MESSAGE 0: BROADCAST AIS ASM MESSAGE

ASM Message 0 may contain encapsulated AIS Messages 6, 8, 12, 14, 21, 25 or 26. Acknowledgement is not supported for addressed messages. This message type is for terrestrial use only.

The encapsulated message may or may not be transmitted on AIS1 or AIS2 channels.

If the encapsulation repeats a Message that was transmitted on AIS1 or AIS2 channel, the encapsulation and transmission of messages shall be performed as soon as possible, according to configuration, after receiving the relevant messages which are required to be retransmitted.

The communication state of the encapsulated message shall always be set to zero at encapsulation.

The receiving station shall output all received encapsulated AIS Messages at the PI immediately after reception. Scheduled broadcast message is defined in Table 26.

**Table 26 - Broadcast AIS ASM Message**

| Parameter                     | Number of bits   | Description   |
|-------------------------------|--|---|
| Message ID                    | 4  | 0 - Selected AIS messages that are output at receiving mobile station PI by using VDM sentence with no communication state  |
| Retransmit flag               | 1  | 0 (reserved for future use)   |
| Repeat Indicator              | 2  | If the encapsulation repeats a Message that was transmitted on AIS1 or AIS2 channel, this is used to indicate how many times a message has been repeated. Encapsulation represents one repeat.<br>Possible values: 0 – 3:<br>0 = default, shall be used in case where the message is sent only on ASM channel(s);<br>1: also transmitted on AIS channel(s);<br>2, 3 = also transmitted on AIS channel(s) and repeated as counted by the repeat indicator on ASM channel.  |
| Session ID                    | 6  | The Session ID associates the VDL transmission with a specific PI transaction   |
| Source ID                     | 32   | The Unique Identifier of the transmitting station as described in section 3.4   |
| Data Count                    | 11   | Size of actual data in Binary Data and ASM Identifier field in bits, excluding padding bits range: from 1 to maximum data count   |
| Binary Data<br>(no FEC / FEC) | 1 slot: 296 / 200<br>2 slot: 808 / 584<br>3 slot: 1320 / 968 | Content is encapsulated AIS Messages that are channelled through ASM Channels. The Message 0 is transmitted only by Base Stations. Receiver is expected to be ASM-capable mobile station where the ASM-box would relay the encapsulated AIS messages to local presentation interface. The encapsulated AIS Messages would then be output at the PI using VDM sentence. The arrangement would thus be compliant with existing nav presentations.<br>Application data as specified by the ASM Identifier.<br>The available length of the binary data is specified by the Link Id. |

## B 6.4. MESSAGE 1: SCHEDULED BROADCAST MESSAGE

This ASM message is used to broadcast data to all targets, and utilizes MITDMA communication state. Multiple messages, or periodically broadcasted messages may be chained together using the MITDMA communication state. The first transmission in the chain will use RATDMA to access the link, and all additional transmission will use slots allocated by the MITDMA communication state. Scheduled broadcast message is defined in Table 27.



**Table 27 - Scheduled broadcast message**

| Parameter                     | Number of bits   | Description  |
|-------------------------------|--|--|
| Message ID                    | 4  | 1 - Broadcast message with MITDMA communication state  |
| Retransmit flag               | 1  | 0 (reserved for future use)  |
| Repeat Indicator              | 2  | Used by the repeater to indicate how many times a message has been repeated.<br>0 - 3; 0 = default; 3 = do not repeat any more                                     |
| Session ID                    | 6  | The Session ID associates the VDL transmission with a specific PI transaction  |
| Source ID                     | 32   | The Unique Identifier of the transmitting station as described in section 3.4  |
| Data Count                    | 11   | 1 – Max data count   |
| ASM identifier                | 16   | Application identifier and described in section B 5.2  |
| Binary Data<br>(no FEC / FEC) | 1 slot: 240 / 144<br>2 slot: 752 / 528<br>3 slot: 1264 / 912<br>SAT: N/A / 808 | Application data as specified by the ASM Identifier.<br>The available length of the binary data is specified by the Link Id.<br>Unused payload data is zero-filled |
| Communication State           | 38   | MITDMA communication state as described in section B 5.4   |
| Spare bits                    | 2  | Spare Bits – reserved for the future   |

## B 6.5. MESSAGE 2: BROADCAST MESSAGE

This ASM message is used to broadcast data to all targets and does not contain a communication state. These broadcast messages are used for non-periodic transmission of data, and access the link using RATDMA. Broadcast message is defined in Table 28.

**Table 28 - Broadcast Message**

| Parameter                     | Number of bits   | Description  |
|-------------------------------|--|--|
| Message ID                    | 4  | 2 - Broadcast message with no communication state  |
| Retransmit flag               | 1  | 0 (reserved for future use)  |
| Repeat Indicator              | 2  | Used by the repeater to indicate how many times a message has been repeated.<br>0 - 3; 0 = default; 3 = do not repeat any more |
| Session ID                    | 6  | The Session ID associates the VDL transmission with a specific PI transaction  |
| Source ID                     | 32   | The Unique Identifier of the transmitting station as described in section 3.4  |
| Data Count                    | 11   | 1 - Max data count   |
| ASM identifier                | 16   | Application identifier and described in section B 5.2  |
| Binary Data<br>(no FEC / FEC) | 1 slot: 280 / 184<br>2 slot: 792 / 568<br>3 slot: 1304 / 952<br>SAT: N/A / 848 | Application data as specified by the ASM Identifier.<br>The available length of the binary data is specified by the Link Id.   |

## B 6.6. MESSAGE 3: SCHEDULED ADDRESSED MESSAGE

This ASM message is used to send data to an individual target, and utilizes MITDMA communication state. Multiple transmission of messages, or periodically transmissions of messages may be chained together using the MITDMA communication state. The first transmission in the chain will use RATDMA access the link, and all additional transmission will use slots allocated by the MITDMA communication state.

These transmissions require the destination station to return a message acknowledgment (Message 5). This addressed message supplies the return slot for the message acknowledgment. Scheduled addressed message is defined in Table 29.

**Table 29 - Scheduled addressed message**

| Parameter                     | Number of bits   | Description  |
|-------------------------------|--|--|
| Message ID                    | 4  | 3 – Individually addressed message with MITDMA communication state   |
| Retransmit flag               | 1  | Indicates that this is a retransmission of data  |
| Repeat Indicator              | 2  | Used by the repeater to indicate how many times a message has been repeated.<br>0 - 3; 0 = default; 3 = do not repeat any more |
| Session ID                    | 6  | The Session ID associates the VDL transmission with a specific PI transaction  |
| Source ID                     | 32   | The Unique Identifier of the transmitting station, as described in section 3.4   |
| Destination ID                | 32   | The Unique Identifier of the receiving station, as described in section 3.4  |
| Data Count                    | 11   | 1 - Max data count   |
| ASM identifier                | 16   | Application identifier and described in section B 5.2  |
| Binary Data<br>(no FEC / FEC) | 1 slot: 208 / 112<br>2 slot: 720 / 496<br>3 slot: 1232 / 880<br>SAT: N/A / 776 | Application data as specified by the ASM Identifier.<br>The available length of the binary data is specified by the Link Id.   |
| Communication State           | 38   | MITDMA communication state as described in section B 3.5.8.4   |
| Spare bits                    | 2  | Spare Bits – reserved for the future   |

## B 6.7. MESSAGE 4: ADDRESSED MESSAGE

This ASM message is used to send data to an individual target and does not contain a communication state. This message is used for non-periodic transmission of data, and access the link using RATDMA.

These transmissions require the destination station to return a message acknowledgment (Message 5). The destination station will use RATDMA to send the message acknowledgment. Addressed message is defined in Table 30.

**Table 30 - Addressed message**

| Parameter                     | Number of bits   | Description  |
|-------------------------------|--|--|
| Message ID                    | 4  | 4 – Individually addressed message with no communication state   |
| Retransmit flag               | 1  | Indicates that this is a retransmission of data  |
| Repeat Indicator              | 2  | Used by the repeater to indicate how many times a message has been repeated.<br>0 - 3; 0 = default; 3 = do not repeat any more |
| Session ID                    | 6  | The Session ID associates the VDL transmission with a specific PI transaction  |
| Source ID                     | 32   | The Unique Identifier of the transmitting station as described in section 3.4  |
| Destination ID                | 32   | The Unique Identifier of the receiving station as described in section 3.4   |
| Data Count                    | 11   | 1 - Max: data count  |
| ASM identifier                | 16   | Application identifier and described in section B 5.2  |
| Binary Data<br>(no FEC / FEC) | 1 slot: 248 / 152<br>2 slot: 760 / 536<br>3 slot: 1272 / 920<br>SAT: N/A / 816 | Application data as specified by the ASM Identifier.<br>The available length of the binary data is specified by the Link Id.   |

## B 6.8. MESSAGE 5: ACKNOWLEDGMENT MESSAGE

This ASM message is used to return message acknowledgments to one or more addressed messages. Note that this message should always use Link ID of 5 (3/4 coding rate). Acknowledgement message is defined in Table 31.

**Table 31 - Acknowledgment message**

| Parameter                    | Number of bits                                     | Description   |
|------------------------------|--|---|
| Message ID                   | 4  | 5 – Multiple acknowledgment message with no communication state   |
| Retransmit flag              | 1  | 0 (reserved for future use)   |
| Repeat Indicator             | 2  | Used by the repeater to indicate how many times a message has been repeated.<br>0 - 3; 0 = default; 3 = do not repeat any more  |
| Session ID                   | 6  | The Session ID associates the VDL transmission with a specific PI transaction   |
| Source ID                    | 32   | The Unique Identifier of the transmitting station as described in section 3.4   |
| Destination ID               | 32   | The Unique Identifier of the receiving station as described in section 3.4  |
| ACK/NACK Mask                | 16   | Specifies which MITDMA block IDs failed. Bit map field with the LSB representing Block ID 0, the MSB representing Block ID 15.<br>“1” indicates a packet failed<br>“0” indicates the packet was received ok |
| Coding rate adaption request | 2  | 0 (reserved for future use)   |
| Channel Quality Indicator    | 8  | Signal quality  |
| Zero padding (no FEC / FEC)  | 1 slot: 249 / 153<br>SAT: N/A / 817<br>As required | Padding bits are added as required to complete the block size. These bits are not available for future use.   |

## B 6.9. MESSAGE 6: GEOGRAPHICAL MULTICAST MESSAGE

This ASM message is used to broadcast data to a group of stations as defined by the specified geographical area. The broadcast message does not contain a communication state. These broadcast messages are used for non-periodic transmission of data, and access the link using RATDMA. Geographical multicast message is defined in Table 32.

**Table 32 - Geographical multicast message**

| Parameter                  | Number of bits   | Description  |
|----------------------------|--|--|
| Message ID                 | 4  | 6 – Geographical addressed message with no communication state   |
| Retransmit flag            | 1  | Indicates that this is a retransmission of data  |
| Repeat Indicator           | 2  | Used by the repeater to indicate how many times a message has been repeated.<br>0 - 3; 0 = default; 3 = do not repeat any more                                 |
| Session ID                 | 6  | The Session ID associates the VDL transmission with a specific PI transaction  |
| Source ID                  | 32   | The Unique Identifier of the transmitting station as described in section 3.4  |
| Longitude 1                | 18   | Longitude of area to which the group assignment applies; upper right corner (north-east); in 1/10 min<br>( $\pm 180^\circ$ , East = positive, West = negative) |
| Latitude 1                 | 17   | Latitude of area to which the group assignment applies; upper right corner (north-east); in 1/10 min<br>( $\pm 90^\circ$ , North = positive, South = negative) |
| Longitude 2                | 18   | Longitude of area to which the group assignment applies; lower left corner (south-west); in 1/10 min<br>( $\pm 180^\circ$ , East = positive, West = negative)  |
| Latitude 2                 | 17   | Latitude of area to which the group assignment applies; lower left corner (south-west); in 1/10 min<br>( $\pm 90^\circ$ , North = positive, South = negative)  |
| Data Count                 | 11   | 1 – Max data count   |
| Spare bits                 | 2  | Spare Bits – reserved for the future   |
| ASM identifier             | 16   | Application identifier and described in section B 5.2  |
| Binary Data (no FEC / FEC) | 1 slot: 208 / 112<br>2 slot: 720 / 496<br>3 slot: 1232 / 880<br>SAT: N/A / 776 | Application data as specified by the ASM Identifier.<br>The available length of the binary data is specified by the Link Id.                                   |

## B 7. EXAMPLE OF ASM BURST SYMBOL GENERATION

The following shows an example of generating one VDE-ASM burst, using Link Config ID #5. An ASM Acknowledgement Message is used as a simple example.

This is done by (a) Generating the ASM Message structure (b) bit packing the message, (b) appending CRC32, (c) performing FEC encoding with flushing bits, (d) bit-scrambling and (e) Adding Syncword and Link ID + symbol-mapping:

(a) Input message structure (Using ASM Acknowledgement Message as an example) See Section B 6.8.

| Parameter                    | Number of Bits    | Value     | Bits  |
|------------------------------|-------------------|-----------|---|
| Message ID                   | 4                 | 5         | 0 1 0 1   |
| Retransmit flag              | 1                 | 0         | 0   |
| Repeat Indicator             | 2                 | 0         | 0 0   |
| Source ID                    | 32                | 123456789 | 0 0 0 0 0 1 1 1    0 1 0 1 1 0 1 1    1 1 0 0 1 1 0 1    0 0 0 1 0 1 0 1  |
| Destination ID               | 32                | 987654321 | 0 0 1 1 1 0 1 0    1 1 0 1 1 1 1 0    0 1 1 0 1 0 0 0    1 0 1 1 0 0 0 1  |
| ACK/NACK Mask                | 16                | 0         | 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0    0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0  |
| Coding rate adaption request | 2                 | 0         | 0 0   |
| Signal Quality Indicator     | 8                 | 100       | 0 1 1 0 0 1 0 0   |
| <b>Total bits above</b>      | <b>97</b>         |           |   |
| Zero padding                 | 159<br>(256 - 97) | 0         | 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0    0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0    0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0    0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0    0 0 0 0 0<br>0 0 0    0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0    0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0<br>0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0    0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0    0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0    0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0    0 0 0 0 0<br>0 0 0    0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0    0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0<br>0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0    0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0    0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0    0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0    0 0 0 0 0<br>0 0 0    0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 |

(b) Bit packed ASM Acknowledgement Message, using LinkID#5 (256 bits) :

```
010101000000001110101101111001101000101010011101011011110011010001011000  
100000000000000000000000110010000000000000000000000000000000000000000000  
000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000  
000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000
```

(c) Input for Turbo encoder (256 bits payload + 32 bits CRC = 288 bits) :

[illegible]

(d) Turbo encoded data with flushing (288 bits /  $\frac{3}{4}$  FEC rate + 10 FEC tail bits = 394 bits):

```
001010000000000010110101111011110001100100001011101001110101011110111
10010111010000010101000010100000000010000010100000110100100010000010000
00000000000101000000010000000100000000000000100000000000000000000001
0000010100000001000001000000010100000100000001000000010100000001000000
01000000000000001010000000000000100000001010000010100000001000001001101
10111100010100000011011011001101011001101001
```

(e) Scrambled Data (394 bits) :

```
001010111111011101011110111011011110000111101011110000001111000000101
110011001010111101111101110101100110111010001110101101010001101111110011
```

```

110000000101110010000101101101110000010110101110000111011111100010010
0000011101101011000010010111100100101011000011001110011100110011010011
011010110110101110111011011111100011010010001010001101001011000111010
10101101100100100001001100110111110010101111

```

- (f) Symbol Mapped with QPSK (27 symbols syncword + 16 symbols Link ID + 197 symbols data = 240 symbols Total) :

-- Syncword symbols:

(+0.7,+0.7),(+1.0,+0.0),(+0.7,+0.7),(+1.0,+0.0),(+0.7,+0.7),(+1.0,+0.0),(-0.7,-0.7),(-1.0,+0.0),(+0.7,+0.7),(+1.0,+0.0),(-0.7,-0.7),(+1.0,+0.0),(-0.7,-0.7),(+1.0,+0.0),  
 (-0.7,-0.7),(-1.0,+0.0),(-0.7,-0.7),(-1.0,+0.0),(-0.7,-0.7),(+1.0,+0.0),(+0.7,+0.7),(-1.0,+0.0),(-0.7,-0.7),(+1.0,+0.0),(-0.7,-0.7),(+1.0,+0.0),(-0.7,-0.7),

-- Link ID symbols:

(+1.0,+0.0),(-0.7,+0.7),(+0.0,+1.0),(-0.7,+0.7),(+1.0,+0.0),(+0.7,-0.7),(+1.0,+0.0),(-0.7,+0.7),(+0.0,+1.0),(+0.7,+0.7),(+1.0,+0.0),(+0.7,-0.7),(+0.0,-1.0),  
 (+0.7,+0.7),(+1.0,+0.0),(+0.7,+0.7),

-- Data symbols:

(-1.0,+0.0),(+0.7,-0.7),(+0.0,-1.0),(+0.7,+0.7),(+1.0,+0.0),(+0.7,+0.7),(+0.0,+1.0),(+0.7,-0.7),(+0.0,-1.0),(+0.7,+0.7),(+1.0,+0.0),(-0.7,+0.7),(+1.0,+0.0),(-0.7,+0.7),  
 (+0.0,-1.0),(+0.7,+0.7),(+0.0,-1.0),(+0.7,+0.7),(+1.0,+0.0),(-0.7,-0.7),(-1.0,+0.0),(+0.7,+0.7),(+1.0,+0.0),(-0.7,+0.7),(+0.0,+1.0),(+0.7,+0.7),(-1.0,+0.0),(-0.7,-0.7),  
 (-1.0,+0.0),(+0.7,+0.7),(+0.0,-1.0),(-0.7,-0.7),(-1.0,+0.0),(-0.7,+0.7),(+0.0,+1.0),(+0.7,+0.7),(-1.0,+0.0),(+0.7,+0.7),(-1.0,+0.0),(+0.7,-0.7),(+0.0,-1.0),(+0.7,+0.7),  
 (+1.0,+0.0),(-0.7,+0.7),(+1.0,+0.0),(+0.7,+0.7),(+0.0,+1.0),(+0.7,-0.7),(+0.0,-1.0),(+0.7,+0.7),(-1.0,+0.0),(+0.7,+0.7),(+0.0,+1.0),(+0.7,+0.7),(+0.0,-1.0),(-0.7,-0.7),  
 (+1.0,+0.0),(+0.7,+0.7),(+0.0,+1.0),(+0.7,-0.7),(+0.0,-1.0),(-0.7,-0.7),  
 (+1.0,+0.0),(+0.7,-0.7),(+0.0,-1.0),(+0.7,+0.7),(+0.0,+1.0),(-0.7,+0.7),(-1.0,+0.0),(-0.7,+0.7),(+0.0,-1.0),(+0.7,+0.7),(+1.0,+0.0),(+0.7,+0.7),(-1.0,+0.0),(+0.7,+0.7),  
 (+1.0,+0.0),(-0.7,-0.7),(-1.0,+0.0),(-0.7,-0.7),(+0.0,+1.0),(-0.7,+0.7),(+1.0,+0.0),(-0.7,-0.7),(+0.0,-1.0),(-0.7,-0.7),(+0.0,+1.0),(-0.7,+0.7),(+0.0,-1.0),(+0.7,+0.7),  
 (+0.0,+1.0),(+0.7,+0.7),(-1.0,+0.0),(-0.7,-0.7),(+0.0,+1.0),(-0.7,+0.7),(+0.0,-1.0),(+0.7,-0.7),(+1.0,+0.0),(+0.7,-0.7),(-1.0,+0.0),(-0.7,+0.7),(+1.0,+0.0),(-0.7,+0.7),  
 (+1.0,+0.0),(+0.7,+0.7),(+1.0,+0.0),(-0.7,-0.7),(+0.0,+1.0),(-0.7,-0.7),(+0.0,-1.0),(-0.7,-0.7),(-1.0,+0.0),(-0.7,+0.7),(+1.0,+0.0),(-0.7,+0.7),(+0.0,-1.0),(+0.7,-0.7),  
 (+1.0,+0.0),(-0.7,-0.7),(-1.0,+0.0),(+0.7,-0.7),(+0.0,+1.0),(-0.7,+0.7),(+1.0,+0.0),(+0.7,-0.7),(+0.0,+1.0),(-0.7,-0.7),(+0.0,-1.0),(-0.7,-0.7),(+0.0,-1.0),  
 (+0.7,-0.7),(+1.0,+0.0),(-0.7,-0.7),  
 (-1.0,+0.0),(+0.7,+0.7),(-1.0,+0.0),(+0.7,+0.7),(+0.0,-1.0),(-0.7,+0.7),(+1.0,+0.0),(-0.7,-0.7),(+1.0,+0.0),(-0.7,-0.7),(+1.0,+0.0),(-0.7,+0.7),(-1.0,+0.0),(+0.7,+0.7),  
 (+0.0,+1.0),(+0.7,-0.7),(+0.0,-1.0),(+0.7,+0.7),(+0.0,+1.0),(+0.7,-0.7),(+0.0,-1.0),(+0.7,+0.7),(+0.0,-1.0),(+0.7,+0.7),(+0.0,-1.0),(+0.7,+0.7),(+0.0,-1.0),  
 (+1.0,+0.0),(+0.7,+0.7),(-1.0,+0.0),(-0.7,+0.7),(+0.0,-1.0),(+0.7,-0.7),(+0.0,+1.0),(-0.7,-0.7),(+0.0,+1.0),(-0.7,+0.7),(-1.0,+0.0),(-0.7,+0.7),(+0.0,-1.0),(+0.7,-0.7),  
 (+0.0,+1.0),(-0.7,+0.7),(+0.0,-1.0),(-0.7,-0.7),(+1.0,+0.0),(+0.7,-0.7),(+0.0,-1.0),(+0.7,-0.7),(+0.0,-1.0),(+0.7,-0.7),(+0.0,-1.0),(+0.7,-0.7),(+0.0,-1.0),  
 (+0.7,+0.7),(+0.0,+1.0),(+0.7,-0.7),(+0.0,+1.0),(+0.7,-0.7),(+0.0,+1.0),(-0.7,-0.7),  
 (+0.0,-1.0),(-0.7,-0.7),(+0.0,+1.0),(-0.7,-0.7),(+1.0,+0.0),(-0.7,-0.7),(+1.0,+0.0),(-0.7,+0.7),(+1.0,+0.0),(+0.7,+0.7),(-1.0,+0.0),(+0.7,-0.7),(+0.0,-1.0),(+0.7,+0.7),(+1.0,+0.0),

## **ANNEX C**    **TECHNICAL CHARACTERISTICS OF VDE-TERRESTRIAL IN THE MARITIME MOBILE BAND**

### **C 1. INTRODUCTION**

This section describes those elements of the VDE-TER that are unique to VDE-TER operation. For those elements that are common, the cross reference into Annex A is provided. It contains a description of the different protocols according to the OSI layer model and recommends implementation details for each layer.

Data transmission is made in the VHF maritime mobile band within the spectrum identified in Section 3.3. The spectrum may be used as 25 kHz, 50 kHz or 100 kHz channels.

The system should use TDMA techniques in a synchronized manner.

### **C 2. OSI LAYER**

Refer to Annex A.

### **C 3. PHYSICAL LAYER**

#### **C 3.1. RANGE**

The communication range of terrestrial VDE is typically 20–50 NM.

#### **C 3.2. TRANSMITTER PARAMETER SETTINGS**

Refer to Annex A for transmitter parameter settings for mobile stations.

#### **C 3.3. ANTENNA**

Refer to Annex A.

#### **C 3.4. MODULATION**

##### **C 3.4.1. WAVEFORMS**

The waveforms are defined in Annex A.

##### **C 3.4.2. BIT MAPPING**

For bit mappings, see Annex A.

#### **C 3.5. SENSITIVITY AND INTERFERENCE**

VDE uses adaptive modulation and coding to maximise spectral efficiency and throughput. Sensitivity and interference levels for the supported modulation methods are given in Table 33.

**Table 33 - Sensitivity and Carrier to Interference Ratios**

| Receiver parameters | Requirements      |                   |                   |                   |                   |                   |
|---------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
|                     | LinkID 11         | LinkID 13         | LinkID 14         | LinkID 16         | LinkID 17         | LinkID 19         |
| Sensitivity         | 1% PER @ -111 dBm | 1% PER @ -108 dBm | 1% PER @ -108 dBm | 1% PER @ -105 dBm | 1% PER @ -105 dBm | 1% PER @ -102 dBm |

### C 3.6. SYMBOL TIMING ACCURACY

Refer to Annex A.

### C 3.7. TRANSMITTER TIMING JITTER

Refer to Annex A.

### C 3.8. SLOT TRANSMISSION ACCURACY AT THE OUTPUT

Refer to Annex A.

### C 3.9. FRAME STRUCTURE

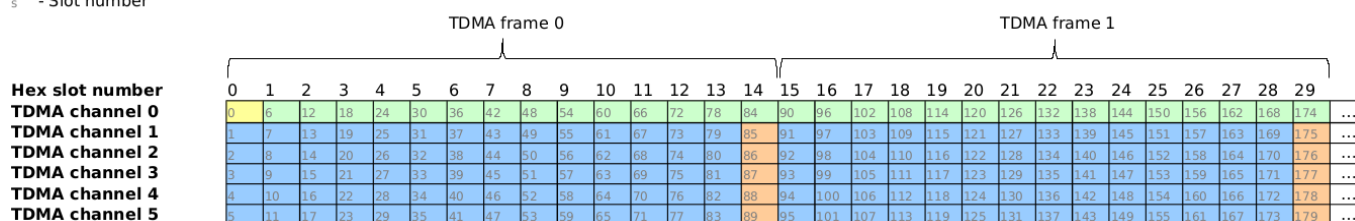
Refer to Annex A.

## C 4. LINK LAYER

### C 4.1. TDMA HIERARCHY

TDMA hierarchy describes the use of slots in a time interleaved pattern, thus non-continuous in time. Figure 21 details the TDMA layout. Note that the numbers inside each block indicate the slot number. Time runs from top to bottom from left to right.

s - Slot number



**Figure 21 - TDMA hierarchy**

#### C 4.1.1. HEXSLOT

Six slots should form a Hexslot (HS). The HS has duration of 160 ms. The HS should be numbered cyclically from 0 to 4. The HS should be incremented after every 6 slots.

#### C 4.1.2. TDMA CHANNEL

A TDMA channel refers to all the slots with the same offset in a Hexslot. Every 6<sup>th</sup> slot is part of the same TDMA channel. 6 TDMA channels are defined. Figure 21 shows each TDMA channel as a horizontal line of slots.

#### C 4.1.3. TDMA FRAME

A TDMA channel is divided into TDMA frames. The duration of a TDMA frame is defined as 15 slots within a TDMA channel. TDMA frames are numbered from 0 to 24.

The functionality to configure a TDMA frame length by a shore station exists, but is reserved for future use.

#### **C 4.1.4. TDMA SLOT**

A TDMA slot defines the slot number within a TDMA frame. With the TDMA frame length of 15 slots, the TDMA slots will be cyclically numbered from 0 to 14.

### **C 4.2. LINK LAYER DEFINITIONS**

---

#### **C 4.2.1. LOGICAL CHANNEL**

Logical Channels define functions for a set of continuous slots within a TDMA channel and may repeat in a TDMA channel. See C 4.12.

#### **C 4.2.2. PHYSICAL CHANNEL**

A Physical Channel is defined by a frequency and bandwidth.

#### **C 4.2.3. VDE SLOTMAP**

Each Physical Channel is associated with one VDE Slotmap to map Logical Channels to slots for one frame.

#### **C 4.2.4. BULLETIN BOARD**

The bulletin board message is sent by the control station to define the Physical Channels with their VDE Slotmap for a control station service area. See C 4.13.

#### **C 4.2.5. SHORT DATA MESSAGE**

The short data message refers to the data transfer protocol used for transmission of payload in one slot only.

#### **C 4.2.6. DATA SESSION**

A data session refers to the data transfer protocol used for transmission of payload in a TDMA frame. See C 4.17.

#### **C 4.2.7. MULTISESSION DATA TRANSFER**

Multisession data transfer, refers to multiple data sessions chained together to be able to transmit arbitrary payloads. See C 4.17.

#### **C 4.2.8. DATA FRAGMENT**

During a data session, the data may be broken into multiple data fragments to be transmitted in separate slots. The data fragments refer to the Start Fragment, Continuation Fragment and End Fragment VDE messages. See C 4.17.

### **C 4.3. CONTROL STATION SERVICE AREA**

---

Control stations may transmit a bulletin board message with its control station service area. The bulletin board content only applies to vessels inside the control station service area. While vessels are inside a control station service area, all data session transmissions between ships should take place via the control station.

Ships outside the control station service area may communicate directly. In this case AIS receptions may be used to determine if a ship is within range.

### **C 4.4. RESOURCE MANAGEMENT**

---

The connection between ship and shore is session oriented with a Logical Channel being reserved for a particular ship for a given time.

Ship originated short data messages can be sent on the Random Access Channels without resource allocation.

During heavy network loading, the network control may introduce time dispersion for resource requests, modify the maximum allowed number of ship originated short data messages or only allow traffic with high priority levels.



## C 4.5. ENDIANNESS

The order of bytes within a binary representation of a number is referred to as the endianness.

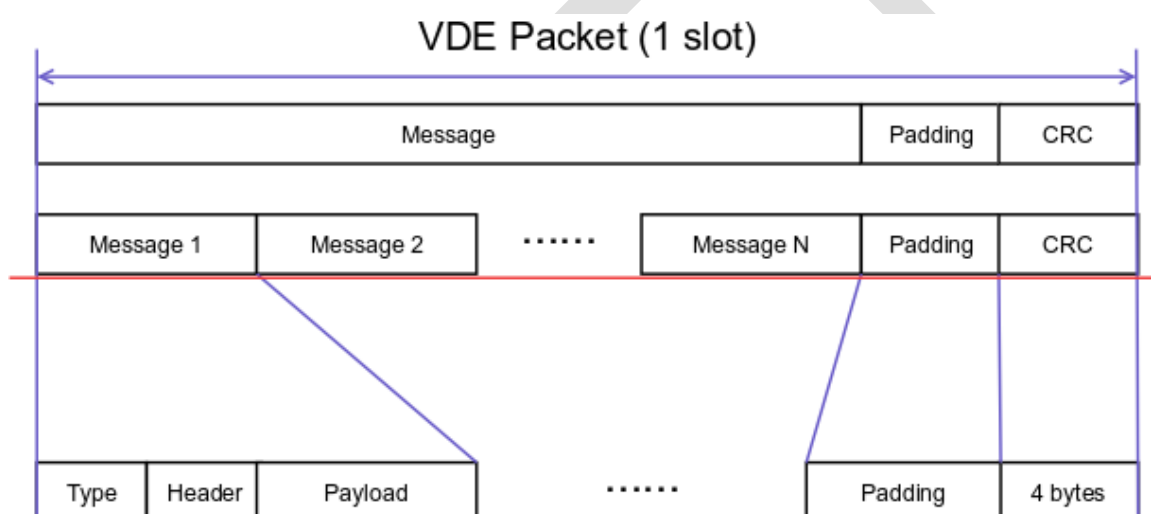
With regards to the message structure, the same endianness is used as in AIS. See ITU-R.M1371-5 Annex 1 section 3.3.7.

When a message is constructed it should be grouped in bytes of 8 bits from top to bottom of the table associated with each message. Multi-byte words are packed most significant byte first in the message.

## C 4.6. DATA STRUCTURES

VDE packet transmissions shall always fit into one slot. The number of bits transmitted per VDE packet shall be fixed, depending on the Link ID used. A packet shall consist of one or multiple VDE messages, zero padding and a CRC.

An example is shown in Figure 22.



*Figure 22 - Single/Multiple Message, zero padding and CRC-32 structure*

Note that the padding is defined as a separate message. The CRC is always at the end of the packet. Preamble and FEC tail bits are not shown.

## C 4.7. ADAPTIVE CODING AND MODULATION/RATE ADAPTION

The signal and interference environment are expected to change with time and location. The control station may use the reported CQI as well as measure the channel quality of the received ship signal and request the ship to adjust the Link ID to maximize throughput. The Physical Channel may not be changed dynamically according to the environment, thus the physical channel in use determines the Link ID's available for selection as determined by the physical channel bandwidth.

Should the Link ID be changed then re-fragmentation of the data payload is required. Re-fragmentation should start at the first fragment that has not been successfully transmitted. This is because the overall data payload is fragmented based on the Link ID used during a data transfer and the fragmentation cannot be re-adjusted for individual fragments in a data transfer.

During ship-to-ship communication outside of control station service area, the Link ID can be controlled by the resource allocating ship. The details for rate adaptation are not defined in this document.

The link adaption mechanism is intentionally undefined.

## C 4.8. SLOT FUNCTIONS

### C 4.8.1. BULLETIN BOARD SIGNALLING CHANNEL

Bulletin board signalling channel (BBSC) slots are reserved for bulletin board message transmissions. All transactions in the BBSC shall use Link ID 11.

### C 4.8.2. RANDOM ACCESS CHANNEL

Random access channel (RAC) slots are reserved for requests, resource allocations or short data message transmissions by mobile stations. All VDE transactions in the RAC shall use Link ID 11.

### C 4.8.3. ANNOUNCEMENT SIGNALLING CHANNEL

Announcement signalling channel (ASC) slots are reserved for requests, assignments or ad-hoc one-slot data transmissions by the control station. All VDE transactions in the ASC shall use Link ID 11.

### C 4.8.4. DATA CHANNEL

Data channel (DC) slots are reserved for data transmission messages. The Link ID used in the DC is defined by message 4, Resource allocation and may be changed with message 13, ACK/NACK.

### C 4.8.5. DATA SIGNALLING CHANNEL

Data signalling channel (DSCH) slots are reserved for acknowledgements, resource allocation and resource de-allocations for the DC within the same TDMA channel. The link ID used in the DSCH is defined by message 4, Resource allocation and may be changed with message 13, ACK/NACK.

### C 4.8.6. RANGING CHANNEL

The Ranging Channel (RC) is reserved for ranging applications.

### C 4.8.6. VDE-TER DEFAULT SLOT FUNCTIONS

The default slot functions are defined in Figure 23 and Figure 24.

|             |                                   |           |           |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |           |
|-------------|-----------------------------------|-----------|-----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|-----------|
| <b>BBSC</b> | Bulletin Board Signalling Channel |           |           |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |           |
| <b>RAC</b>  | Random Access Signalling Channel  |           |           |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |           |
| <b>ASC</b>  | Announcement Signalling Channel   |           |           |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |           |
| <b>DSCH</b> | Data Signalling Channel           |           |           |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |           |
| <b>DC</b>   | Data Channel                      |           |           |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |           |
| s           | Slot number                       |           |           |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |           |
| TDMA 0      | 0 BBSC                            | 6 BBSC    | 12 BBSC   | 18 RAC   | 24 RAC   | 30 RAC   | 36 RAC   | 42 RAC   | 48 RAC   | 54 RAC   | 60 RAC   | 66 RAC   | 72 RAC   | 78 RAC   | 84 RAC    |
| TDMA 1      | 1                                 | 7         | 13        | 19       | 25       | 31       | 37       | 43       | 49       | 55       | 61       | 67       | 73       | 79       | 85 DSCH   |
| TDMA 2      | 2                                 | 8         | 14        | 20       | 26       | 32       | 38       | 44       | 50       | 56       | 62       | 68       | 74       | 80       | 86 DSCH   |
| TDMA 3      | 3                                 | 9         | 15        | 21       | 27       | 33       | 39       | 45       | 51       | 57       | 63       | 69       | 75       | 81       | 87 DSCH   |
| TDMA 4      | 4                                 | 10        | 16        | 22       | 28       | 34       | 40       | 46       | 52       | 58       | 64       | 70       | 76       | 82       | 88 DSCH   |
| TDMA 5      | 5                                 | 11        | 17        | 23       | 29       | 35       | 41       | 47       | 53       | 59       | 65       | 71       | 77       | 83       | 89 DSCH   |
| TDMA 0      | 90 BBSC                           | 96 BBSC   | 102 BBSC  | 108 RAC  | 114 RAC  | 120 RAC  | 126 RAC  | 132 RAC  | 138 RAC  | 144 RAC  | 150 RAC  | 156 RAC  | 162 RAC  | 168 RAC  | 174 RAC   |
| TDMA 1      | 91                                | 97        | 103       | 109      | 115      | 121      | 127      | 133      | 139      | 145      | 151      | 157      | 163      | 169      | 175 DSCH  |
| TDMA 2      | 92                                | 98        | 104       | 110      | 116      | 122      | 128      | 134      | 140      | 146      | 152      | 158      | 164      | 170      | 176 DSCH  |
| TDMA 3      | 93                                | 99        | 105       | 111      | 117      | 123      | 129      | 135      | 141      | 147      | 153      | 159      | 165      | 171      | 177 DSCH  |
| TDMA 4      | 94                                | 100       | 106       | 112      | 118      | 124      | 130      | 136      | 142      | 148      | 154      | 160      | 166      | 172      | 178 DSCH  |
| TDMA 5      | 95                                | 101       | 107       | 113      | 119      | 125      | 131      | 137      | 143      | 149      | 155      | 161      | 167      | 173      | 179 DSCH  |
| ...         | ...                               | ...       | ...       | ...      | ...      | ...      | ...      | ...      | ...      | ...      | ...      | ...      | ...      | ...      | ...       |
| TDMA 0      | 2160 BBSC                         | 2166 BBSC | 2172 BBSC | 2178 RAC | 2184 RAC | 2190 RAC | 2196 RAC | 2202 RAC | 2208 RAC | 2214 RAC | 2220 RAC | 2226 RAC | 2232 RAC | 2238 RAC | 2244 RAC  |
| TDMA 1      | 2161                              | 2167      | 2173      | 2179     | 2185     | 2191     | 2197     | 2203     | 2209     | 2215     | 2221     | 2227     | 2233     | 2239     | 2245 DSCH |
| TDMA 2      | 2162                              | 2168      | 2174      | 2180     | 2186     | 2192     | 2198     | 2204     | 2210     | 2216     | 2222     | 2228     | 2234     | 2240     | 2246 DSCH |
| TDMA 3      | 2163                              | 2169      | 2175      | 2181     | 2187     | 2193     | 2199     | 2205     | 2211     | 2217     | 2223     | 2229     | 2235     | 2241     | 2247 DSCH |
| TDMA 4      | 2164                              | 2170      | 2176      | 2182     | 2188     | 2194     | 2200     | 2206     | 2212     | 2218     | 2224     | 2230     | 2236     | 2242     | 2248 DSCH |
| TDMA 5      | 2165                              | 2171      | 2177      | 2183     | 2189     | 2195     | 2201     | 2207     | 2213     | 2219     | 2225     | 2231     | 2237     | 2243     | 2249 DSCH |

Figure 23 - VDE-TER Ship to Shore default slot functions (lower leg)



|      |                                   |
|------|-----------------------------------|
| BBSC | Bulletin Board Signalling Channel |
| RAC  | Random Access Signalling Channel  |
| ASC  | Announcement Signalling Channel   |
| DSCH | Data Signalling Channel           |
|      | Data Channel                      |
| s    | Slot number                       |

|        |         |           |           |           |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |           |
|--------|---------|-----------|-----------|-----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|-----------|
| TDMA 0 | 0 BBSC  | 6 BBSC    | 12 BBSC   | 18 RAC    | 24 ASC   | 30 RAC   | 36 ASC   | 42 RAC   | 48 ASC   | 54 RAC   | 60 ASC   | 66 RAC   | 72 ASC   | 78 RAC   | 84 ASC   |           |
| TDMA 1 | 1       | 7         | 13        | 19        | 25       | 31       | 37       | 43       | 49       | 55       | 61       | 67       | 73       | 79       | 85 DSCH  |           |
| TDMA 2 | 2       | 8         | 14        | 20        | 26       | 32       | 38       | 44       | 50       | 56       | 62       | 68       | 74       | 80       | 86 DSCH  |           |
| TDMA 3 | 3       | 9         | 15        | 21        | 27       | 33       | 39       | 45       | 51       | 57       | 63       | 69       | 75       | 81       | 87 DSCH  |           |
| TDMA 4 | 4       | 10        | 16        | 22        | 28       | 34       | 40       | 46       | 52       | 58       | 64       | 70       | 76       | 82       | 88 DSCH  |           |
| TDMA 5 | 5       | 11        | 17        | 23        | 29       | 35       | 41       | 47       | 53       | 59       | 65       | 71       | 77       | 83       | 89 DSCH  |           |
| TDMA 0 | 90 BBSC | 96 BBSC   | 102 BBSC  | 108 RAC   | 114 ASC  | 120 RAC  | 126 ASC  | 132 RAC  | 138 ASC  | 144 RAC  | 150 ASC  | 156 RAC  | 162 ASC  | 168 RAC  | 174 ASC  | ...       |
| TDMA 1 | 91      | 97        | 103       | 109       | 115      | 121      | 127      | 133      | 139      | 145      | 151      | 157      | 163      | 169      | 175 DSCH | ...       |
| TDMA 2 | 92      | 98        | 104       | 110       | 116      | 122      | 128      | 134      | 140      | 146      | 152      | 158      | 164      | 170      | 176 DSCH | ...       |
| TDMA 3 | 93      | 99        | 105       | 111       | 117      | 123      | 129      | 135      | 141      | 147      | 153      | 159      | 165      | 171      | 177 DSCH | ...       |
| TDMA 4 | 94      | 100       | 106       | 112       | 118      | 124      | 130      | 136      | 142      | 148      | 154      | 160      | 166      | 172      | 178 DSCH | ...       |
| TDMA 5 | 95      | 101       | 107       | 113       | 119      | 125      | 131      | 137      | 143      | 149      | 155      | 161      | 167      | 173      | 179 DSCH | ...       |
| ...    | ...     | ...       | ...       | ...       | ...      | ...      | ...      | ...      | ...      | ...      | ...      | ...      | ...      | ...      | ...      | ...       |
| TDMA 0 | ...     | 2166 BBSC | 2166 BBSC | 2172 BBSC | 2178 RAC | 2184 ASC | 2190 RAC | 2196 ASC | 2202 RAC | 2208 ASC | 2214 RAC | 2220 ASC | 2226 RAC | 2232 ASC | 2238 RAC | 2244 ASC  |
| TDMA 1 | ...     | 2161      | 2167      | 2173      | 2179     | 2185     | 2191     | 2197     | 2203     | 2209     | 2215     | 2221     | 2227     | 2233     | 2239     | 2245 DSCH |
| TDMA 2 | ...     | 2162      | 2168      | 2174      | 2180     | 2186     | 2192     | 2198     | 2204     | 2210     | 2216     | 2222     | 2228     | 2234     | 2240     | 2246 DSCH |
| TDMA 3 | ...     | 2163      | 2169      | 2175      | 2181     | 2187     | 2193     | 2199     | 2205     | 2211     | 2217     | 2223     | 2229     | 2235     | 2241     | 2247 DSCH |
| TDMA 4 | ...     | 2164      | 2170      | 2176      | 2182     | 2188     | 2194     | 2200     | 2206     | 2212     | 2218     | 2224     | 2230     | 2236     | 2242     | 2248 DSCH |
| TDMA 5 | ...     | 2165      | 2171      | 2177      | 2183     | 2189     | 2195     | 2201     | 2207     | 2213     | 2219     | 2225     | 2231     | 2237     | 2243     | 2249 DSCH |

Figure 24 - VDE-TER Ship to Ship and Shore to Ship default slot functions (upper leg)

## C 4.9. VDE-TER MESSAGES

*Table 34 – VDE Message Summary*

| Type | Name   | Description  | Slot Function     |
|------|--|--|-------------------|
| 0    | Media access control                           | Changes random access selection interval.  | BB, AC            |
| 4    | Resource allocation                            | Allocated LC resource to data session.   | AC, RAC, DSCH     |
| 13   | ACK/NACK                                       | Acknowledgement or negative-acknowledgement.   | AC, RAC, DSCH     |
| 20   | Bulletin board message start fragment          | Start fragment of bulletin board message used for control station service area configuration.  | BB                |
| 21   | Bulletin board message continuation fragment   | Middle fragment of bulletin board message used for control station service area configuration. | BB                |
| 22   | Bulletin board message end fragment            | Last fragment of bulletin board message used for control station service area configuration.   | BB                |
| 74   | Start fragment                                 | Start data fragment of data session.   | DC                |
| 75   | Continuation fragment                          | Middle data fragment of data session.  | DC                |
| 76   | End fragment                                   | Last data fragment of data session.  | DC                |
| 81   | Padding byte                                   | Byte used for padding.   | BB, AC, RAC, DSCH |
| 90   | Resource request/<br>Transmission announcement | Request resource from station or announce transmission to follow.                              | AC, RAC           |
| 92   | Short data message (with ACK)                  | Short data message. ACK is required.   | AC, RAC           |
| 93   | Short Data Message (no ACK).                   | Short message that does not require an ACK. May be used for broadcasting.                      | AC, RAC           |

## C 4.9.1. MEDIA ACCESS CONTROL

**Table 35 – Media Access Control**

| Media access control |                 |              |                                  |  |
|----------------------|-----------------|--------------|----------------------------------|--|
| Field no             | Value (Dec)     | Size (Bytes) | Function                         | Content  |
| 1                    | 000             | 1            | Type                             |  |
| 2                    | 0 to $2^{16}-1$ | 2            | Length                           | 8: Total size in bytes, fixed at 8 bytes   |
| 3                    | 0-255           | 1            | Media Access priority level      | Reserved for future use. Always 0.   |
| 4                    | 0-511           | 2            | Random access selection interval | The Random Access scheme selection interval in Hexslots.<br>0 – Default selection interval applies |
| 5                    | 0-127           | 1            | Short data message limit         | Maximum allowed number of Short Data Message transmissions on the RAC during a frame.              |
| 6                    | 0-255           | 1            | System status                    | 0: Normal<br>10: Busy<br>20: Temporarily out of service<br>30: Scheduled out of service            |

Note:

Provides methods for granting data transfer access.

When a mobile station receives a MAC message, this message takes preference over the BB message parameters and the mobile station should apply the random access selection interval for a duration selected randomly between 4 and 8 minutes. After the expiry of the duration, the random access selection interval should revert back to the parameters specified by the BB.

If the random access selection interval is set to 0, then the BB random access selection interval applies.

## C 4.9.2. RESOURCE ALLOCATION

**Table 36 – Resource Allocation**

| Resource allocation |                 |              |                    |   |
|---------------------|-----------------|--------------|--------------------|---|
| Field no            | Value (Dec)     | Size (Bytes) | Function           | Content   |
| 1                   | 004             | 1            | Type               |   |
| 2                   | 0 to $2^{16}-1$ | 2            | Length             | Total size in bytes, variable.  |
| 3                   | 0 to $2^{32}-1$ | 4            | Source ID          | The Unique Identifier of the transmitting station as described in section 3.4   |
| 4                   | 0 to $2^{32}-1$ | 4            | Destination ID     | The Unique Identifier of the ship being assigned a Logical Channel as described in section 3.4.   |
| 5                   | 0-255           | 1            | Logical Channel Tx | Logical Channel assigned to the session for transmission. Transmission only applies to data slots. <sup>(1)</sup> LC of 255 indicates no resource.                                |
| 6                   | 0-255           | 1            | Logical Channel Rx | Logical Channel assigned to the session for reception. Reception only applies to data signalling slots. <sup>(1)</sup> LC of 255 indicates no resource.                           |
| 7                   | 0-255           | 1            | Link ID            | The link ID that must be used in the TDMA channel. This will apply to Messages 74, 75, 76 and 13.   |
| 8                   | 1-255           | 1            | TDMA frame delay   | The number of TDMA frames to delay before the resource may be used. Resource may only be assigned from the start of the next TDMA frame. Default 1. <sup>(2)</sup> <sup>(3)</sup> |
| 9 <sup>(4)</sup>    | 0               | 1            | Session ID         | Session ID.   |
| 10                  | 0-255           | 1            | CQI                | Received Channel Quality Indicator as defined in A 1.2.8  |

Notes:

<sup>(1)</sup> The resource allocation message will always be sent on the signalling channel when being sent in response to a Resource Request (#90) message and will always be sent in the assigned TDMA channel when sent in response to a Continuation Fragment (#75). When the Resource Allocation message is being sent in the assigned TDMA channel, then the message must be transmitted in the same VDE packet as the Ack (#13) message. See Fragment Continuation for more details.

- (2) When assigning a Logical Channel, then both the Logical Channel Tx and the Logical Channel Rx must have identical TDMA channel numbers. The assigned LCs may have the same Physical Channels for simplex communication and different Physical Channels for duplex communication.
- (3) The TDMA frame delay allows for the efficient transferral of Logical Channels from one vessel to another with as little as possible wasting of slots.
- (4) The Session ID is reserved for future use.

### C 4.9.3. ACK/NACK

**Table 37 – ACK/NACK**

| ACK/NACK         |                 |              |                 |   |
|------------------|-----------------|--------------|-----------------|---|
| Field no         | Value (Dec)     | Size (Bytes) | Function        | Content   |
| 1                | 013             | 1            | Type            |   |
| 2                | 0 to $2^{16}-1$ | 2            | Length          | Total size in bytes.  |
| 3                | 0 to $2^{32}-1$ | 4            | Source ID       | The Unique Identifier of the transmitting station, as described in section 3.4  |
| 4                | 0 to $2^{32}-1$ | 4            | Destination ID  | The Unique Identifier of the receiving station, as described in section 3.4   |
| 5 <sup>(1)</sup> | 0               | 1            | Session ID      | Session ID of data session.   |
| 6                | 0 to $2^{16}-1$ | 2            | ACK/NACK mask 0 | When a packet was not received, then its corresponding bit must be set to one to Not Acknowledge the packet.<br><br>Each NACK mask corresponds to a data transfer session that started with a Start Fragment and ended with a Continuation Fragment. If the Start Fragment is not received, then the least significant bit is set.<br><br>The first Continuation Fragment corresponds with the next bit, and so on, with the End Fragment being represented by the last bit. If there were 10 fragments and the End Fragment was not received, then the NACK mask must be logically or-ed with 0x0200.<br><br>NACK mask 2 represents the latest TDMA frame received directly before this message response. NACK mask 1 represents the second to last TDMA frame received. NACK mask 0 represents the third to last TDMA frame received. |
| 7                | 0 to $2^{16}-1$ | 2            | NACK mask 1     |   |
| 8                | 0 to $2^{16}-1$ | 2            | NACK mask 2     |   |
| 9                | 0-255           | 1            | CQI             | Received Channel Quality Indicator averaged over the last TDMA frame received as defined in A 1.2.8   |
| 10               | 0-255           | 1            | ACM or EDN      | 0: Maintain Link ID.<br>1: Increment Link ID (higher rate)<br>2: Decrease Link ID.<br>3: End Delivery Notification<br>The Link ID may only be changed if all the fragments have been successfully received and the ACK/NACK mask is set to 0. Changing the Link ID must not change the channel bandwidth.   |
| 11               | 0-255           | 1            | Power setting   | 0: Maintain Power Level<br>1: Increase Power Level (Reserved for future use).<br>2: Decrease Power Level (Reserved for future use).   |

**Notes:**

The ACK/NACK message will be transmitted in the Data Signalling Channels on the same Logical Channel as defined by the “Logical Channel Rx” assigned by the Resource Allocation (#4).

During short addressed message transmissions, the ACK/NACK message will be transmitted on the RAC.

<sup>(1)</sup> Session ID is reserved for future use.

#### C 4.9.4. RESOURCE REQUEST/TRANSMISSION ANNOUNCEMENT

**Table 38 – Resource Request / Transmission Announcement**

| Resource request/Transmission announcement |                 |              |                         |  |
|--|-----------------|--------------|-------------------------|--|
| Field no                                   | Value (Dec)     | Size (Bytes) | Function                | Content  |
| 1  | 90              | 1            | Type                    |  |
| 2  | 0 to $2^{16}-1$ | 2            | Length                  | Total packet size in bytes.  |
| 3  | 0 to $2^{32}-1$ | 4            | Original Source ID      | The Unique Identifier of the transmitting station, as described in section 3.4.  |
| 4  | 0 to $2^{32}-1$ | 4            | Node Source ID          | Unique Identifier of the current node transmitting the message, as described in section 3.4.   |
| 5  | 0 to $2^{32}-1$ | 4            | Node Destination ID     | Unique Identifier of the current node receiving the message, as described in section 3.4.  |
| 6  | 0 to $2^{32}-1$ | 4            | Original Destination ID | The Unique Identifier of the receiving station, as described in section 3.4.   |
| 7  | 0-255           | 1            | Priority                | Set to 0. Reserved for future use.   |
| 8  | 0 to $2^{32}-1$ | 4            | Terminal capabilities   | This field is a 32-bit bitmask with each bit set to indicate capabilities/restrictions of a unit:<br>Bit 0: All Bandwidths and modulation schemes as per VDE v1.0 supported.<br>Bit 1: Unit has only 1 VDE receiver.<br>Bit 2 to 31: Reserved for future use. Should be set to zero. |

Note:

The Resource request message will be transmitted on the RAC by ships and ASC by shore stations.

The four MMSI numbers allow for multiple hops of data messages between many stations. The original source and original destination IDs are the end points of the communication while the node source and node destination IDs are the immediate stations communicating with each other during the current hop.

#### C 4.9.5. SHORT DATA MESSAGE (WITH ACK)

**Table 39 – Short Data Message (with ACK)**

| Short data message (with ACK) |                 |              |                   |  |
|-------------------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------------|--|
| Field no                      | Value (Dec)     | Size (bytes) | Function          | Comment  |
| 1                             | 92              | 1            | Type              |  |
| 2                             | 0 to $2^{16}-1$ | 2            | Length            | Total size in bytes, variable.   |
| 3                             | 0 to $2^{32}-1$ | 4            | Source ID         | The Unique Identifier of the transmitting station, as described in section 3.4   |
| 4 <sup>(1)</sup>              | 0               | 1            | Session ID        | Session ID   |
| 5                             | 0 to $2^{32}-1$ | 4            | Destination ID    | Destination MMSI. May not be set to zero (broadcast address).  |
| 6                             | 0 to 255        | 1            | Retransmission no | Starts with value 0 and increments with every retransmission. Handles lost ACKs<br>Value of 255 indicates no ACK is requested. |
| 7                             |                 | Variable     | Payload           |  |

Notes:

Must always be transmitted on the RAC by ship and ASC by shore station. The short data message ACK message must be transmitted on the RAC by ship and ASC by shore.

<sup>(1)</sup> Session ID is reserved for future use.

#### C 4.9.6. SHORT DATA MESSAGE (NO ACK)

**Table 40 Short Data Message (no ACK)**

| Short data message (no ACK) |                 |              |                |   |
|-----------------------------|-----------------|--------------|----------------|---|
| Field no                    | Value (Dec)     | Size (bytes) | Function       | Comment   |
| 1                           | 93              | 1            | Type           |   |
| 2                           | 0 to $2^{16}-1$ | 2            | Length         | Total size in bytes, variable.  |
| 3                           | 0 to $2^{32}-1$ | 4            | Source ID      | The Unique Identifier of the transmitting station, as described in section 3.4                          |
| 4 <sup>(1)</sup>            | 0               | 1            | Session ID     | Session ID.   |
| 5                           | 0 to $2^{32}-1$ | 4            | Destination ID | The Unique Identifier of the receiving station, as described in section 3.4.<br>Set to 0 for broadcast. |
| 6                           |                 | Variable     | Payload        |   |

May be used on the RC in conjunction with Link IDs 35, 36, 37 and 38 in order to support ranging applications.

<sup>(1)</sup> Session ID is reserved for future use.

#### C 4.9.7. BULLETIN BOARD START FRAGMENT MESSAGE

**Table 41 – Bulletin Board Start Fragment Message**

| Bulletin board start fragment message |                 |              |                        |  |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------|--------------|------------------------|--|
| Field no                              | Value (Dec)     | Size (Bytes) | Function               | Content  |
| 1                                     | 020             | 1            | Type                   |  |
| 2                                     | 0 to $2^{16}-1$ | 2            | Length                 | Total size in bytes, variable  |
| 3                                     | 0 to $2^{32}-1$ | 4            | Source ID              | The Unique Identifier of the transmitting station, as described in section 3.4   |
| 4                                     | 0 to 255        | 1            | Control station ID     |  |
| 5                                     | 0 to $2^{16}-1$ | 2            | Bulletin Board version | Version number of this Bulletin Board<br>All valid versions are stored in the ship terminal (includes Configuration Message) |
| 6                                     | 0 to 255        | 1            | Number of fragments    | Must be a value from 1 to 6 (TBC)  |



|   |  |          |                        |  |
|---|--|----------|------------------------|--|
| 7 |  | Variable | Bulletin Board Payload | See Bulletin Board Payload Definition Table 42 |
|---|--|----------|------------------------|--|

**Table 42 – Bulletin Board Payload**

| Bulletin board payload |                 |              |  |  |
|------------------------|-----------------|--------------|--|--|
| Field no               | Value (Dec)     | Size (Bytes) | Function   | Content  |
| 1                      | 0 to $2^{32}-1$ | 4            | Start time for this version                        | UTC start time for this version of the Bulletin Board in number of seconds since 1. January 2000 00:00:00 UTC  |
| 2                      | 0 to $2^{16}-1$ | 2            | Validity of this version                           | Lifetime of this version in number of 1 minute frames<br>Up to 45 days   |
| 3                      | 0 to 255        | 1            | TDMA frame size                                    | The size of TDMA frames in Hexslots.<br>May have the following values:<br>2, 3, 5, 6, 9, 10, 15 (default)<br>Only 15 have to be supported.   |
| 4                      |                 | Variable     | Physical Channel definitions                       | See Physical Channel Definition Table 46.  |
| 5                      | 0 to 255        | 1            | Modulation, coding and protocol versions supported | Reserved for future use. Set to zero.<br>Defines a mandatory base set and optional more capable versions. Network ID segmentation could be used to distinguish different network types.<br>ASM reception flag one of the parameters for satellite.<br>Reserved for future use. Must be set to 0. |
| 6                      |                 | 9            | Control station service area point 1               | Parameter (longitude and latitude) defining the control station service area North East corner.<br>GNSS rectangle longitude and latitude as defined in Recommendation ITU-R M.1371. See Table 43 Control station service area.   |
| 8                      |                 | 64           | Authentication and integrity sequence              | Reserved for future use. Set to zero.  |

**Table 43 Control station service area**

| Name                 | Value | Field size (bits) | Comment   |
|----------------------|-------|-------------------|---|
| Longitude of point 1 |       | 18                | Longitude of area to which the assignment applies; upper right corner (North-East); in 1/10 min, or 18 MSBs of addressed station ID 1 ( $\pm 180^\circ$ , East = positive, West = negative)<br>181 = not available                          |
| Latitude of point 1  |       | 17                | Latitude of area to which the assignment applies; upper right corner (North-East); in 1/10 min, or 12 LSBs of addressed station ID 1, followed by 5 zero bits ( $\pm 90^\circ$ , North = positive, South = negative)<br>91° = not available |
| Longitude of point 2 |       | 18                | Longitude of area to which the assignment applies; lower left corner (South-West); in 1/10 min, or 18 MSBs of addressed station ID 2 ( $\pm 180^\circ$ , East = positive, West = negative)  |
| Latitude of point 2  |       | 17                | Latitude of area to which the assignment applies; lower left corner (South-West); in 1/10 min, or 12  |

| Name    | Value | Field size (bits) | Comment  |
|---------|-------|-------------------|--|
|         |       |                   | LSBs of addressed station ID 2, followed by 5 zero bits ( $\pm 90^\circ$ , North = positive, South = negative) |
| Padding |       | 2                 | Padding bits for byte alignment. Set to zero.  |

#### C 4.9.8. BULLETIN BOARD CONTINUATION FRAGMENT MESSAGE

**Table 44 – Bulletin Board Continuation Fragment Message**

| Bulletin board continuation fragment message |                 |              |                        |  |
|--|-----------------|--------------|------------------------|--|
| Field no                                     | Value (Dec)     | Size (Bytes) | Function               | Content  |
| 1  | 021             | 1            | Type                   |  |
| 2  | 0 to $2^{16}-1$ | 2            | Length                 | Total size in byte, variable.  |
| 3  | 0 to $2^{32}-1$ | 4            | Source ID              | The Unique Identifier of the transmitting station, as described in section 3.4   |
| 4  | 0 to 255        | 1            | Control station ID     |  |
| 5  | 0 to $2^{16}-1$ | 2            | Bulletin Board version | Version number of this Bulletin Board<br>All valid versions are stored in the ship terminal (includes Configuration Message) |
| 6  | 0 to 255        | 1            | Fragment number        |  |
| 7  |                 | Variable     | Bulletin Board Payload | See Bulletin Board Payload Definition Table 42   |

#### C 4.9.9. BULLETIN BOARD END FRAGMENT MESSAGE

**Table 45 – Bulletin Board End Fragment Message**

| Bulletin board end fragment message |                 |              |                        |  |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------|--------------|------------------------|--|
| Field no                            | Value (Dec)     | Size (Bytes) | Function               | Content  |
| 1                                   | 022             | 1            | Type                   |  |
| 2                                   | 0 to $2^{16}-1$ | 2            | Length                 | Total size in bytes, variable  |
| 3                                   | 0 to $2^{32}-1$ | 4            | Source ID              | The Unique Identifier of the transmitting station, as described in section 3.4   |
| 4                                   | 0 to 255        | 1            | Control station ID     |  |
| 5                                   | 0 to $2^{16}-1$ | 2            | Bulletin Board version | Version number of this Bulletin Board<br>All valid versions are stored in the ship terminal (includes Configuration Message) |
| 6                                   | 0 to 255        | 1            | Fragment number        |  |
| 7                                   |                 | Variable     | Bulletin Board Payload | See Bulletin Board Payload Definition Table 42.  |

**Table 46 - Physical Channel Definition**

| Name                            | Value                                    | Field size (bits) | Comment   |
|---------------------------------|--|-------------------|---|
| Number of Physical Channels N   | 0 to 255                                 | 8                 | Number of Physical Channels defined in control station service area.                          |
| Physical Channel 0 (PC0) number | 0 to 255                                 | 8                 | Defines the first Physical Channel number.  |
| PC0 Channel Frequency           | As defined in ITU-R M.1084               | 12                | Channel number as defined in ITU-R M.1084 VDES lower leg:<br>1284: 157.2375 MHz (TER default) |
| Reserved                        |  | 1                 | Reserved for future use.  |
| PC0 Bandwidth                   | 0 to 2                                   | 2                 | 0 – 25 kHz<br>1 – 50 kHz (reserved for future use)<br>2 – 100 kHz (default)                   |
| PC0 Tx flag                     | 0 or 1                                   | 1                 | 0 – mobile may not transmit on this PC<br>1 – mobile may transmit on this PC                  |
| PC0 RA Selection Interval       | 0 to 511                                 | 9                 | The Random Access scheme selection interval in Hexslots. 0 for default.                       |
| PC0 Short Data Message Limit    | 0 to 127                                 | 7                 | Maximum allowed number of Short Data Message transmissions on the RAC during a frame.         |
| PC0 Logical Channel Definition  | See Logical Channel Definition Table 47. | Variable          | Defines the Logical Channel definition of Physical Channel 0                                  |
| ...                             | ...                                      | ...               | ...   |
| Physical Channel N (PCN) number | 0 to 255                                 | 8                 | Defines the last Physical Channel number.   |
| PCN Channel Frequency           | As defined in ITU-R M.1084               | 12                | Channel number as defined in ITU-R M.1084 VDES upper leg:<br>2284: 161.8375 MHz (TER default) |
| Reserved                        |  | 1                 | Reserved for future use.  |
| PCN Bandwidth                   | 0 to 2                                   | 2                 | 0 – 25 kHz<br>1 – 50 kHz (reserved for future use)<br>2 – 100 kHz (default)                   |
| PCN Tx flag                     | 0 or 1                                   | 1                 | 0 – mobile may not transmit on this PC<br>1 – mobile may transmit on this PC                  |
| PCN RA Selection Interval       | 0 to 511                                 | 9                 | The Random Access scheme selection interval in Hexslots. 0 for default.                       |
| PCN Short Data Message Limit    | 0 to 127                                 | 7                 | Maximum allowed number of Short Data Message transmissions on the RAC during a frame.         |
| PCN Logical Channel Definition  | See Logical Channel Definition Table 47  | Variable          | Defines the Logical Channel definition of Physical Channel N.                                 |

**Table 47 - Logical Channel definition terrestrial**

| Name            | Value   | Field size (bits) | Comment   |
|-----------------|---------|-------------------|---|
| TDMA 0 LC Count | 0 to 63 | 6                 | Number of Logical Channels defined inside TDMA channel 0. |
| TDMA 1 LC Count | 0 to 63 | 6                 | Number of Logical Channels defined inside TDMA channel 1. |
| TDMA 2 LC Count | 0 to 63 | 6                 | Number of Logical Channels defined inside TDMA channel 2. |
| TDMA 3 LC Count | 0 to 63 | 6                 | Number of Logical Channels defined inside TDMA channel 3. |
| TDMA 4 LC Count | 0 to 63 | 6                 | Number of Logical Channels defined inside TDMA channel 4. |
| TDMA 5 LC Count | 0 to 63 | 6                 | Number of Logical Channels defined inside TDMA channel 5. |
| LC 0 Function   | 0 to 5  | 3                 | Slot Function<br>0 – Bulletin Board                       |

| Name          | Value    | Field size (bits)   | Comment   |
|---------------|----------|---|---|
|               |          |   | 1 – Random Access<br>2 – Announcement Signalling<br>3 – Data<br>4 – Data Signalling<br>5 – Ranging  |
| LC 0 Repeat   | 0 to 511 | 9   | Slot duration of function. When set to 0, the slot function is set to a duration of 1 slot and doesn't repeat.                            |
| ...           | ...      | ...   | ...   |
| LC N Function | 0 to 5   | 3   | Slot Function<br>0 – Bulletin Board<br>1 – Random Access<br>2 – Announcement Signalling<br>3 – Data<br>4 – Data Signalling<br>5 – Ranging |
| LC N Repeat   | 0 to 511 | 9   | Slot duration of function. When set to 0, the slot function is set to a duration of 1 slot and doesn't repeat.                            |
| Padding       | 0        | 4 if total number of LC definition pairs are even.<br>0 if total number of LC definition pairs are odd. | Padded with 0 valued bits to ensure byte alignment of Logical Channel Definition.   |

Note:  
See C 4.13 for explanation.

## C 4.9.10. START FRAGMENT

**Table 48 – Start Fragment**

| Start fragment   |                 |              |                       |   |
|------------------|-----------------|--------------|-----------------------|---|
| Field no         | Value (Dec)     | Size (Bytes) | Function              | Content   |
| 1                | 074             | 1            | Type                  |   |
| 2                | 0 to $2^{16}-1$ | 2            | Length                | Total size in bytes, variable   |
| 3                | 0 to $2^{32}-1$ | 4            | Source ID             | The Unique Identifier of the current node transmitting this message, as described in section 3.4  |
| 5 <sup>(1)</sup> | 0               | 1            | Session ID            | Session ID.   |
| 4                | 0 to $2^{32}-1$ | 4            | Destination ID        | The Unique Identifier of the current node receiving this message, as described in section 3.4<br>Set to 0 for broadcast.                |
| 6                | 0 to 255        | 1            | Number of Fragments   | Number of fragments in this session.<br>Must be a value from 1 to 14.   |
| 7                | 0 to 255        | 1            | Fragment Number       | Fragment number of the payload in this message. First fragment must start at 0, increment with any additional fragment and wrap at 255. |
| 8                | 0-255           | 1            | Continue data session | 0-Ends data session<br>1-Continue data session with new   |
| 9                |                 | Variable     | Payload               |   |

Note:

Must always be transmitted on the TDMA channel (derived from the Logical Channel) as assigned by a resource allocation.

Will always be transmitted to carry payload of first data fragment.

<sup>(1)</sup>Session ID is reserved for future use.

## C 4.9.11. CONTINUATION FRAGMENT

**Table 49 – Continuation Fragment**

| Continuation fragment |                 |              |                                 |   |
|-----------------------|-----------------|--------------|---------------------------------|---|
| Field no              | Value (Dec)     | Size (Bytes) | Function                        | Content   |
| 1                     | 075             | 1            | Type                            |   |
| 2                     | 0 to $2^{16}-1$ | 2            | Length                          | Total size in bytes, variable.  |
| 3                     | 0 to $2^{32}-1$ | 4            | Source ID                       | The Unique Identifier of the transmitting station, as described in section 3.4  |
| 4 <sup>(1)</sup>      | 0               | 1            | Session ID                      | Session ID.   |
| 5                     | 0 to $2^{32}-1$ | 4            | Destination ID                  | The Unique Identifier of the current node receiving this message, as described in section 3.4<br>Set to 0 for broadcast.                |
| 6                     | 0-255           | 1            | Number of fragments             | Total number of fragments in this session.<br>Must be a value from 1 to 14  |
| 7                     | 0 to 255        | 1            | Fragment number in this session | Must be a value from 2 to 13.   |
| 8                     | 0 - 255         | 1            | Fragment number in this message | Fragment number of the payload in this message. First fragment must start at 0, increment with any additional fragment and wrap at 255. |
| 8                     |                 | Variable     | Payload                         |   |

Note:

Must always be transmitted on the data channel (derived from the Logical Channel) as assigned by a resource allocation.

<sup>(1)</sup>Session ID is reserved for future use.

## C 4.9.12. END FRAGMENT

**Table 50 – End Fragment**

| End fragment     |                         |              |                                 |   |
|------------------|-------------------------|--------------|---------------------------------|---|
| Field no         | Value (Dec)             | Size (Bytes) | Function                        | Content   |
| 1                | 076                     | 1            | Type                            |   |
| 2                | 0 to 2 <sup>16</sup> -1 | 2            | Length                          | Total size in bytes, variable.  |
| 3                | 0 to 2 <sup>32</sup> -1 | 4            | Source ID                       | The Unique Identifier of the transmitting station, as described in section 3.4  |
| 4 <sup>(1)</sup> | 0                       | 1            | Session ID                      | Session ID.   |
| 5                | 0 to 2 <sup>32</sup> -1 | 4            | Destination ID                  | The Unique Identifier of the current node receiving this message, as described in section 3.4<br>Set to 0 for broadcast.                |
| 6                | 0-255                   | 1            | Number of fragments             | Total number of fragments in this session.<br>Must be a value from 1 to 14.   |
| 7                | 0-255                   | 1            | Fragment Number in this message | Fragment number of the payload in this message. First fragment must start at 0, increment with any additional fragment and wrap at 255. |
| 8                | 0-255                   | 1            | Continue Data Session           | 0 – Ends data session.<br>1 – Continues data session with new session ID.   |
| 9                |                         | Variable     | Payload                         |   |

Note: The resource allocation broadcast by the base station repeatedly broadcasts during the TDMA Frame length.

Must always be transmitted on the data channel (derived from the Logical Channel) as assigned by a resource allocation.

Will always be transmitted on last fragment signalling the end of Logical Channel use, unless only one fragment will be transmitted. When only one fragment will be transmitted, then only a Start Fragment will be transmitted.

<sup>(1)</sup>Session ID is reserved for future use

## C 4.9.13. PADDING SINGLE BYTE

**Table 51 – Padding Single Byte**

| Padding single byte |             |              |          |                |
|---------------------|-------------|--------------|----------|----------------|
| Field no            | Value (Dec) | Size (Bytes) | Function | Content        |
| 1                   | 081         | 1            | Type     | 1 byte padding |

## C 4.10. CYCLIC REDUNDANCY CHECK

Refer to A 1.2.5.

## C 4.11. ACKNOWLEDGEMENT (ACK)

Acknowledgement behaviour for the terrestrial link is described in C 4.17.

## C 4.12. LOGICAL CHANNELS (LC)

A Logical Channel defines a grouping of slots that can be uniquely identified and assigned for a specific use.

Logical Channels map slots to slot functions. Logical Channel numbers are used to assign resources to data sessions.

## C 4.13. TERRESTRIAL BULLETIN BOARD

The Terrestrial Bulletin Board (TBB) message defines the slot map for each Physical Channel. The TBB content is defined in C 4.9.7, C 4.9.8 and C 4.9.9. A Bulletin Board message defines a list of Physical Channels. For VDE-TER

each Physical Channel Definition contains six TDMA Channels, each TDMA channel can contain one or more Logical Channels.

A Logical Channel definition starts by announcing the number of Logical Channel definitions per TDMA Channel. Each TDMA Channel, in turn, gets its number of Logical Channels defined by function and duration item pairs. The complete TDMA Channel Slotmap is built up by repeating each TDMA channel's Logical Channel definition from the first Hexslot up to the end of a frame. The Logical Channels must be sized to ensure the repeating pattern aligns with a full frame.

The relationship between LC and Physical Layer for ship to shore, shore to ship and ship to ship mappings are shown in C 4.14.

A VDES station shall always use the latest valid TBB that is received. The TBB shall be used in the frame immediately following the frame in which it is valid. The validity is found by use of the TBB start time and Lifetime fields in the TBB payload (Table 42).

The TBB may be transmitted in either the upper or the lower leg in channels 1024 or 2024 respectively. The mobile station must therefore always listen for the TBB announcement in both upper leg (channel 2024) and lower leg (channel 1024).

Coast stations should coordinate the timing of the transmissions where multiple station coverage is the case.

#### **C 4.14. VDE-TER DEFAULT PHYSICAL CHANNEL AND SLOTMAP**

A Slotmap defines the LC of all the slots in a frame. Each Physical Channel in a VDES system will have a valid Slotmap defined. By monitoring the Terrestrial Bulletin Board, ships will determine if they are within a control station service area and adopt the Physical Channel and Slotmap from the Bulletin Board. In the absence of a Bulletin Board the default Physical Channel and Slotmap will be applied.

The default Physical Channel centre frequency is located in the middle of each VDE1 upper (161,8375MHz) and lower VDE leg (157,2375MHz) and the default bandwidth is set to 100kHz.

Default LC for VDE lower and upper legs are defined as shown in Figure 25 and Figure 26.

Signalling only takes place in RA, ASC and DSCH slots. For VDE-TER, the default slot map keeps all signalling in TDMA 0 channel and at the DSCH slot at the end of every TDMA frame.

TDMA 1-5 channels are broken into TDMA frames of 15 slots where data transfer can take place on the first 14 (DC) slots while the 15<sup>th</sup> slot (DSCH) is used for ACK/NACK and resource allocation signalling.

The default Link ID for all BBSC, RA and ASC slots is 17 (Pi/4 QPSK-100kHz) and the default Link ID for all DC and DSCH slots is 19 (16 QAM-100kHz). The Link ID is set by the control station. The control station can optimise the capacity used for random access and signalling based on traffic loading.



|   |                                   |
|---|-----------------------------------|
|   | Bulletin Board Signalling Channel |
|   | Random Access Signalling Channel  |
|   | Announcement Signalling Channel   |
|   | Data Signalling Channel           |
|   | Data Channel                      |
| S | Slot number                       |
| L | Logical Channel Number            |

|        |       |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|--------|-------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| TDMA 0 | 0 0   | 6 0     | 12 0    | 18 1    | 24 1    | 30 1    | 36 1    | 42 1    | 48 1    | 54 1    | 60 1    | 66 1    | 72 1    | 78 1    | 84 1    |         |
| TDMA 1 | 1 2   | 7 2     | 13 2    | 19 2    | 25 2    | 31 2    | 37 2    | 43 2    | 49 2    | 55 2    | 61 2    | 67 2    | 73 2    | 79 2    | 85 3    |         |
| TDMA 2 | 2 4   | 8 4     | 14 4    | 20 4    | 26 4    | 32 4    | 38 4    | 44 4    | 50 4    | 56 4    | 62 4    | 68 4    | 74 4    | 80 4    | 86 5    |         |
| TDMA 3 | 3 6   | 9 6     | 15 6    | 21 6    | 27 6    | 33 6    | 39 6    | 45 6    | 51 6    | 57 6    | 63 6    | 69 6    | 75 6    | 81 6    | 87 7    |         |
| TDMA 4 | 4 8   | 10 8    | 16 8    | 22 8    | 28 8    | 34 8    | 40 8    | 46 8    | 52 8    | 58 8    | 64 8    | 70 8    | 76 8    | 82 8    | 88 9    |         |
| TDMA 5 | 5 10  | 11 10   | 17 10   | 23 10   | 29 10   | 35 10   | 41 10   | 47 10   | 53 10   | 59 10   | 65 10   | 71 10   | 77 10   | 83 10   | 89 11   |         |
| TDMA 0 | 90 0  | 96 0    | 102 0   | 108 1   | 114 1   | 120 1   | 126 1   | 132 1   | 138 1   | 144 1   | 150 1   | 156 1   | 162 1   | 168 1   | 174 1   | ...     |
| TDMA 1 | 91 2  | 97 2    | 103 2   | 109 2   | 115 2   | 121 2   | 127 2   | 133 2   | 139 2   | 145 2   | 151 2   | 157 2   | 163 2   | 169 2   | 175 3   | ...     |
| TDMA 2 | 92 4  | 98 4    | 104 4   | 110 4   | 116 4   | 122 4   | 128 4   | 134 4   | 140 4   | 146 4   | 152 4   | 158 4   | 164 4   | 170 4   | 176 5   | ...     |
| TDMA 3 | 93 6  | 99 6    | 105 6   | 111 6   | 117 6   | 123 6   | 129 6   | 135 6   | 141 6   | 147 6   | 153 6   | 159 6   | 165 6   | 171 6   | 177 7   | ...     |
| TDMA 4 | 94 8  | 100 8   | 106 8   | 112 8   | 118 8   | 124 8   | 130 8   | 136 8   | 142 8   | 148 8   | 154 8   | 160 8   | 166 8   | 172 8   | 178 9   | ...     |
| TDMA 5 | 95 10 | 101 10  | 107 10  | 113 10  | 119 10  | 125 10  | 131 10  | 137 10  | 143 10  | 149 10  | 155 10  | 161 10  | 167 10  | 173 10  | 179 11  | ...     |
| ...    | ...   | ...     | ...     | ...     | ...     | ...     | ...     | ...     | ...     | ...     | ...     | ...     | ...     | ...     | ...     | ...     |
| TDMA 0 | ...   | 2160 0  | 2166 0  | 2172 0  | 2178 1  | 2184 1  | 2190 1  | 2196 1  | 2202 1  | 2208 1  | 2214 1  | 2220 1  | 2226 1  | 2232 1  | 2238 1  | 2244 1  |
| TDMA 1 | ...   | 2161 2  | 2167 2  | 2173 2  | 2179 2  | 2185 2  | 2191 2  | 2197 2  | 2203 2  | 2209 2  | 2215 2  | 2221 2  | 2227 2  | 2233 2  | 2239 2  | 2245 3  |
| TDMA 2 | ...   | 2162 4  | 2168 4  | 2174 4  | 2180 4  | 2186 4  | 2192 4  | 2198 4  | 2204 4  | 2210 4  | 2216 4  | 2222 4  | 2228 4  | 2234 4  | 2240 4  | 2246 5  |
| TDMA 3 | ...   | 2163 6  | 2169 6  | 2175 6  | 2181 6  | 2187 6  | 2193 6  | 2199 6  | 2205 6  | 2211 6  | 2217 6  | 2223 6  | 2229 6  | 2235 6  | 2241 6  | 2247 7  |
| TDMA 4 | ...   | 2164 8  | 2170 8  | 2176 8  | 2182 8  | 2188 8  | 2194 8  | 2200 8  | 2206 8  | 2212 8  | 2218 8  | 2224 8  | 2230 8  | 2236 8  | 2242 8  | 2248 9  |
| TDMA 5 | ...   | 2165 10 | 2171 10 | 2177 10 | 2183 10 | 2189 10 | 2195 10 | 2201 10 | 2207 10 | 2213 10 | 2219 10 | 2225 10 | 2231 10 | 2237 10 | 2243 10 | 2249 11 |

Figure 25 - VDE-TER Ship to Shore default slot to LC mapping (lower leg)

|   |                                   |
|---|-----------------------------------|
|   | Bulletin Board Signalling Channel |
|   | Random Access Signalling Channel  |
|   | Announcement Signalling Channel   |
|   | Data Signalling Channel           |
|   | Data Channel                      |
| S | Slot number                       |
| L | Logical Channel Number            |

|        |       |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|--------|-------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| TDMA 0 | 0 12  | 6 12    | 12 12   | 18 13   | 24 14   | 30 13   | 36 14   | 42 13   | 48 14   | 54 13   | 60 14   | 66 13   | 72 14   | 78 13   | 84 14   |         |
| TDMA 1 | 1 15  | 7 15    | 13 15   | 19 15   | 25 15   | 31 15   | 37 15   | 43 15   | 49 15   | 55 15   | 61 15   | 67 15   | 73 15   | 79 15   | 85 16   |         |
| TDMA 2 | 2 17  | 8 17    | 14 17   | 20 17   | 26 17   | 32 17   | 38 17   | 44 17   | 50 17   | 56 17   | 62 17   | 68 17   | 74 17   | 80 17   | 86 18   |         |
| TDMA 3 | 3 19  | 9 19    | 15 19   | 21 19   | 27 19   | 33 19   | 39 19   | 45 19   | 51 19   | 57 19   | 63 19   | 69 19   | 75 19   | 81 19   | 87 20   |         |
| TDMA 4 | 4 21  | 10 21   | 16 21   | 22 21   | 28 21   | 34 21   | 40 21   | 46 21   | 52 21   | 58 21   | 64 21   | 70 21   | 76 21   | 82 21   | 88 22   |         |
| TDMA 5 | 5 23  | 11 23   | 17 23   | 23 23   | 29 23   | 35 23   | 41 23   | 47 23   | 53 23   | 59 23   | 65 23   | 71 23   | 77 23   | 83 23   | 89 24   |         |
| TDMA 0 | 90 12 | 96 12   | 102 12  | 108 13  | 114 14  | 120 13  | 126 14  | 132 13  | 138 14  | 144 13  | 150 14  | 156 13  | 162 14  | 168 13  | 174 14  | ...     |
| TDMA 1 | 91 15 | 97 15   | 103 15  | 109 15  | 115 15  | 121 15  | 127 15  | 133 15  | 139 15  | 145 15  | 151 15  | 157 15  | 163 15  | 169 15  | 175 16  | ...     |
| TDMA 2 | 92 17 | 98 17   | 104 17  | 110 17  | 116 17  | 122 17  | 128 17  | 134 17  | 140 17  | 146 17  | 152 17  | 158 17  | 164 17  | 170 17  | 176 18  | ...     |
| TDMA 3 | 93 19 | 99 19   | 105 19  | 111 19  | 117 19  | 123 19  | 129 19  | 135 19  | 141 19  | 147 19  | 153 19  | 159 19  | 165 19  | 171 19  | 177 20  | ...     |
| TDMA 4 | 94 21 | 100 21  | 106 21  | 112 21  | 118 21  | 124 21  | 130 21  | 136 21  | 142 21  | 148 21  | 154 21  | 160 21  | 166 21  | 172 21  | 178 22  | ...     |
| TDMA 5 | 95 23 | 101 23  | 107 23  | 113 23  | 119 23  | 125 23  | 131 23  | 137 23  | 143 23  | 149 23  | 155 23  | 161 23  | 167 23  | 173 23  | 179 24  | ...     |
| ...    | ...   | ...     | ...     | ...     | ...     | ...     | ...     | ...     | ...     | ...     | ...     | ...     | ...     | ...     | ...     | ...     |
| TDMA 0 | ...   | 2166 12 | 2166 12 | 2172 12 | 2178 13 | 2184 14 | 2190 13 | 2196 14 | 2202 13 | 2208 14 | 2214 13 | 2220 14 | 2226 13 | 2232 14 | 2238 13 | 2244 14 |
| TDMA 1 | ...   | 2161 15 | 2167 15 | 2173 15 | 2179 15 | 2185 15 | 2191 15 | 2197 15 | 2203 15 | 2209 15 | 2215 15 | 2221 15 | 2227 15 | 2233 15 | 2239 15 | 2245 16 |
| TDMA 2 | ...   | 2162 17 | 2168 17 | 2174 17 | 2180 17 | 2186 17 | 2192 17 | 2198 17 | 2204 17 | 2210 17 | 2216 17 | 2222 17 | 2228 17 | 2234 17 | 2240 17 | 2246 18 |
| TDMA 3 | ...   | 2163 19 | 2169 19 | 2175 19 | 2181 19 | 2187 19 | 2193 19 | 2199 19 | 2205 19 | 2211 19 | 2217 19 | 2223 19 | 2229 19 | 2235 19 | 2241 19 | 2247 20 |
| TDMA 4 | ...   | 2164 21 | 2170 21 | 2176 21 | 2182 21 | 2188 21 | 2194 21 | 2200 21 | 2206 21 | 2212 21 | 2218 21 | 2224 21 | 2230 21 | 2236 21 | 2242 21 | 2248 22 |
| TDMA 5 | ...   | 2165 23 | 2171 23 | 2177 23 | 2183 23 | 2189 23 | 2195 23 | 2201 23 | 2207 23 | 2213 23 | 2219 23 | 2225 23 | 2231 23 | 2237 23 | 2243 23 | 2249 24 |

Figure 26 - VDE-TER Ship to Ship default slot to LC mapping (upper leg)

## C 4.15. DIGITAL SIGNATURE OF BULLETIN BOARD



It is assumed that a Public Key Infrastructure (PKI) is established with an international organization capable of acting as Certificate Authority (CA), and that ITU-T X.509 (10/2016) is used for public key certificates and the PKI implementation. The PKI will serve several systems and among these VDES. For VDES the primary purpose is to attach a digital signature to the Bulletin Board (BB) issued by a VDES control station to authenticate the control station transmitting the BB.

In case the verification of the signature fails on the VDES mobile station this shall be flagged to the user. The system shall continue its operation as if the signature was verified.

Cryptographic algorithm for the end-entities digital signatures is the Elliptic Curve Digital Signature Algorithm (ECDSA). The Elliptic Curve Cryptography (ECC) public key shall therefore be 256 bit. With this key size, the recommendations from RFC 5480 states that the minimum bits of security should be 128, the message digest algorithm SHA-256, and the curve secp256r1. The lifetime of the selected key material is 3 years.

## C 4.16. DATA TRANSFER PROTOCOLS

The following downlink protocols shall be supported:

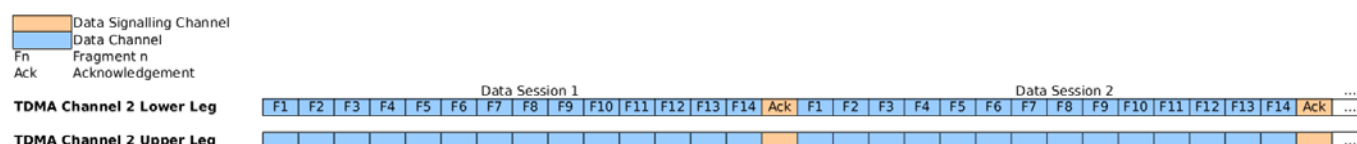
- Shore originated broadcast
- Ship originated broadcast inside/outside control station service area
- Shore to ship addressed message
- Ship to shore addressed message
- Ship to ship addressed message inside/outside control station service area
- Shore to ship short data message
- Ship to shore short data message
- Ship to ship short data message

## C 4.17. DATA SESSION TRANSMISSION AND CONTINUATION

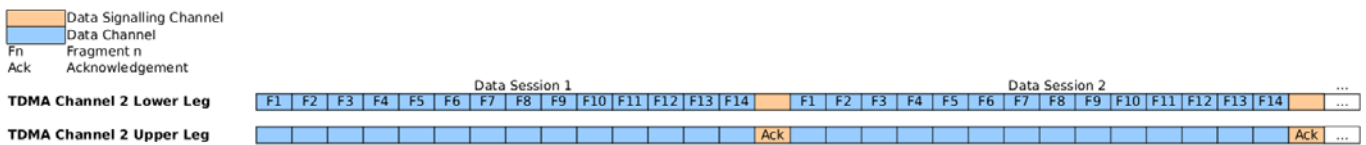
For each data session between two stations, each station will be assigned one Logical Channel for data transmission and one Logical Channel for acknowledgement reception. The two Logical Channels must have identical TDMA Channel numbers but do not have to be on the same Physical Channel. This ensures adequate processing time between message transmissions. When both Logical Channels are on the same Physical Channel, the session is considered simplex (Figure 27). When the two Logical Channels are on different Physical Channels, the session is considered duplex (Figure 28).

Logical Channels assigned for data transmission sessions must have a DC slot function, while Logical Channels assigned for acknowledgement reception, must have DSCH slot function. See C 4.8.

Figure 27 and Figure 28 show examples of the required slot use during simplex and duplex data session transmissions when 14 fragments are transmitted during each TDMA frame. Two TDMA channels are shown from different Physical Channels.



**Figure 27 - Simplex data session**



**Figure 28 - Duplex data session**

All data fragments will be transmitted on DC slots on the assigned Logical Channel only. ACK/NACK messages will be transmitted on the DSCH slots as assigned.

When data exceeds the data packet payload capacity, then data must be broken up and transmitted in fragments. During successful data session transmission, each session will fit into a TDMA frame. This will result in a maximum of 14 fragments per data session (one in each DC slot), before reaching a DSCH slot used for the ACK/NACK.

The first data fragment starts with a Start Fragment (#74) message, continues with Continuation Fragment (#75) messages onwards and ends with an End Fragment (#76) message.

When only one fragment is transmitted, the one fragment must be a Start Fragment (#74).

When two fragments are transmitted, then transmission order will be

1. Start Fragment (#74)
2. End Fragment (#76)

When three fragments are transmitted, then transmission order will be

3. Start Fragment (#74)
4. Continuation Fragment (#75)
5. End Fragment (#76)

Etc.

If the maximum number of fragments (14) are being used and there are data left for transmission, then the data transmission can be continued by setting the “Continue Data Session” parameter in the End Fragment (#76) message to 1. On successful transmission, the data transmission session will be acknowledged with an ACK/NACK (#13) message and a Logical Channel will be immediately assigned by means of a Resource Allocation (#4) message. Both messages ACK/NACK (#13) and Resource Allocation (#4) will be transmitted in the same data signalling slot. If no more LC resources are available, then an ACK/NACK (#13) message may be transmitted with the ACM or EDN parameter set to 3.

#### **C 4.18. DATA FRAME RETRY**

During data frame transmission, it is expected that data fragments can be lost occasionally. When some data fragments are not received, the receiving station shall transmit a NACK message (#13) and flag the lost fragments in the ACK/NACK mask parameter.

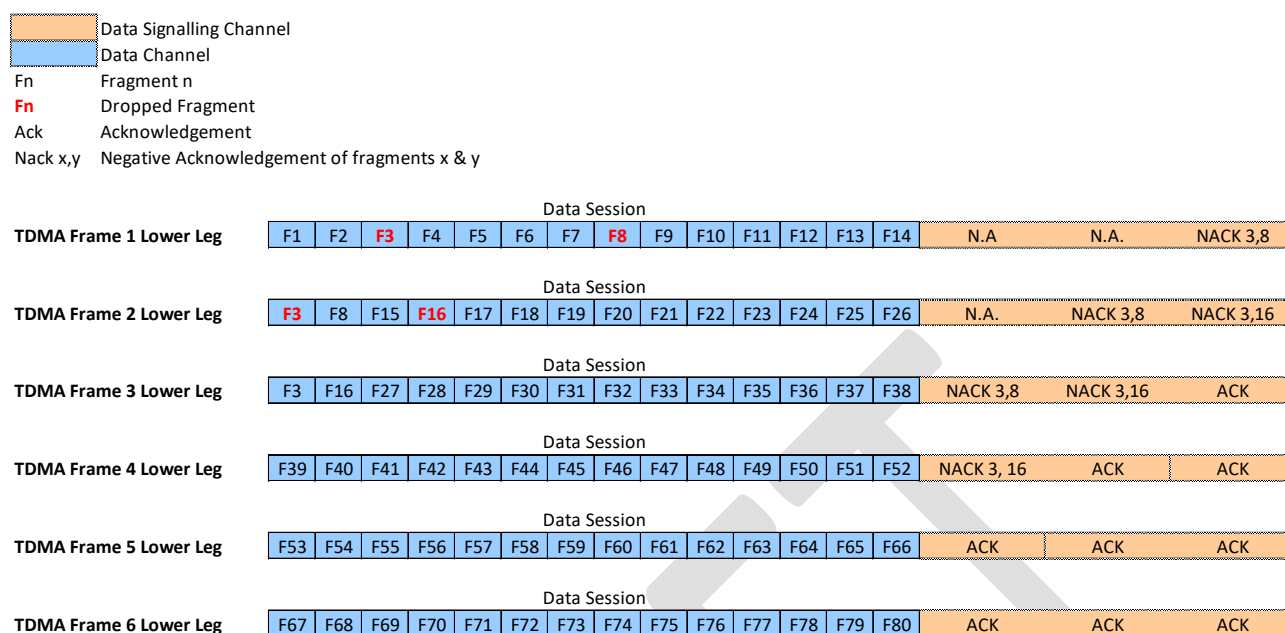
The transmitting station shall retry transmission of each individual fragment for a maximum of 3 times before giving up.

The receiving station shall request retransmission of data fragments for a maximum of 3 attempts.

It is also possible that the NACK message (#13) is not received by the transmitting station. It is for this reason that the NACK message (#13) contains redundancy with three ACK/NACK masks, referencing the previous three TDMA frames.

When the transmitting station does not receive an ACK/NACK, it shall continue as if all the fragments has been acknowledged. If there were any errors, then the transmitting station will see this when it receives the next ACK/NACK message. If no ACK is received within 3 TDMA frames, then the transmitter shall stop transmitting immediately.

An example of this process is shown in Figure 29.



**Figure 29 - Simplex Data Session Retry**

### C 4.19. GIVING PRIORITY TO AIS

VDE transmissions must always give preference to AIS transmissions. It would be expected of AIS message transmissions to occasionally conflict with VDE message transmission times. This conflict would cause VDE messages not to be transmitted and cause the data session retry mechanism to retransmit the dropped VDE message.

A data session may greatly decrease the amount of VDE-AIS message transmission conflicts by monitoring the future slots in the current TDMA frame. During the transmission of the Start Fragment (#74), the number of fragments will be announced in the Start Fragment (#74) message. Before determining the number of fragments to be announced, the future slots can be monitored for internally allocated AIS transmissions during the current TDMA frame of the transmission LC. If the maximum number of fragments would be announced, then the announced number of fragments will be decremented by one for every VDE-AIS message transmission conflict.

For example, if the transmitting station wants to transmit Start Fragment (#74) with an announcement of 14 fragments but detects one AIS message transmission conflict with one of the VDE data fragments, then the transmitting station may transmit Start Fragment (#74) with an announcement of 13 fragments. This way the transmitting station will avoid the data session retry from happening and slowing down the data transfer.

### C 4.20. SHORT DATA MESSAGE

Vessels may transmit short data messages in RAC slots as long as the vessel adheres to the selection interval and short data message transmission limits while inside the control station service area. When vessels are not inside a control station service area, then the default selection interval and short data message transmission limits apply.

### C 4.21. RANDOM ACCESS CHANNEL SCHEME

When a message is scheduled for immediate RAC transmission, then all transmission candidate slots must be gathered over the selection interval. The default selection interval is 150 slots, but may be set via a control station. Only slots with slot function set as RAC may be considered as candidate slots. As an AIS transceiver forms part of the VDES system, the AIS transmission schedules must also be considered. AIS will always have priority over VDE transmissions.

One candidate slot will be randomly selected from all the available candidate slots. If no candidate slot is available or if for some reason, the VDE message could not be transmitted (AIS messages could be scheduled after the VDE schedule), then the VDE transmission will fail and the normal retry mechanism will follow. The retry mechanism will allow up to 3 retries of the RAC transmission.

#### **C 4.22. ANNOUNCEMENT CHANNEL ACCESS SCHEME**

Ad hoc messages (messages 4, 90 & 92) shall be transmitted on AC by the control station and transmitted on RAC by a mobile station to avoid any conflicts between control station and mobile stations.

When scheduling a message for AC transmission, then the first available announcement slot may be selected for transmission. A control station may choose to use RAC slots for the transmission of ad hoc messages during high congestion but must always use the Random Channel Access Scheme when accessing the RAC.

#### **C 4.23. LOGICAL CHANNEL ACCESS**

A resource assignment message assigns two LCs. One LC for data transmission and one LC for receiving signalling information. In addition, the LC pair is assigned with a TDMA frame delay. As the frame delay has a minimum value of 1, transmission can't start in the current TDMA frame at the time of assignment. The LC assignment goes into effect at the beginning of the next frame, after the TDMA frame delay expires.

Only DC slots may be used for transmission and only DSCH slot may be used for the reception of ACK/NACK and resource re-assignment or de-assignment messages.

#### **C 4.24. LOGICAL CHANNEL USE MAP**

Each station should continuously monitor all ASC and DSCH slots for LC resource assignment messages. A station must keep a map of all LCs and mark if they are reserved or free. When an LC remains in use, it will be assigned again at every DSCH slot. If no LC assignment has been received for three consecutive TDMA frames, the LC can be marked as free. Whenever a LC is used for own station transmission or reception, then a LC must be marked as internally assigned for the current TDMA frame and for the following three TDMA frames.

#### **C 4.25. UNUSED LC SLOTS AS RAC SLOTS**

As an LC can only be assigned from the start of the next TDMA frame, an LC that is marked as free in the current TDMA frame, shall remain free for the remainder of the current TDMA frame. As these slots will remain unutilised in the current frame, they may be used as RAC slots. These slots may form part of the random access candidate slots. Free slots from the next TDMA frame may not be added to the list of candidate slots, until such time that the TDMA frame has arrived and the slots are still free.

#### **C 4.26. LOGICAL CHANNEL ASSIGNMENT**

When a ship is outside of the control station service area, the receiving ship should be capable of assigning a LC to another ship after reception of a Resource Request message. The LC assignment must be made by randomly selecting a free LC from the Logical Channel Use Map.

#### **C 4.27. RETRY MECHANISM**

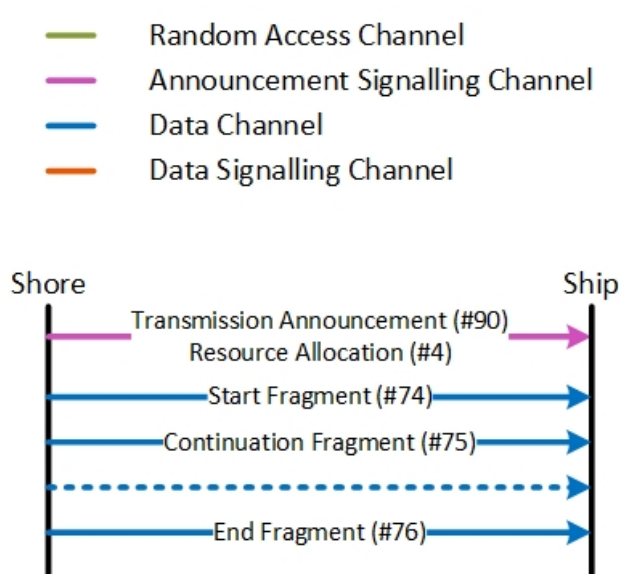
All individual message transmissions and receptions will in general be retried three times before the session will fail and be removed. Because of different selection intervals of different access schemes, the rules for the general retry mechanism will not hold for all the situations and all the special rules and cases will be shown in the state diagrams.

The retry timeouts will also be modified as the selection interval gets changed via the control station.

#### **C 4.28. DATA TRANSFER PROTOCOL DETAIL**

##### **C 4.28.1. SHORE ORIGINATED BROADCAST**

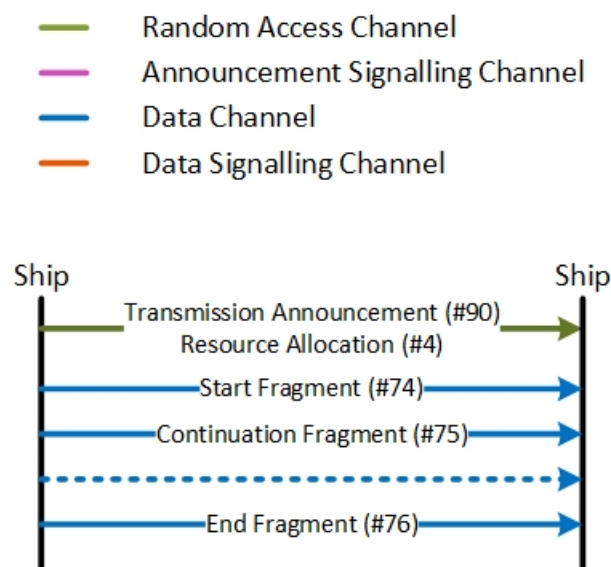
The sequence diagram for shore originated broadcast without ACK is shown in Figure 30. The transfer starts with a resource allocation. The diagram shows a large multi-fragmented data session.



**Figure 30 - Shore originated broadcast sequence diagram**

#### C 4.28.2. SHIP ORIGINATED BROADCAST OUTSIDE CONTROL STATION SERVICE AREA

The sequence diagram for ship originated broadcast outside of control station service area is shown in Figure 31.

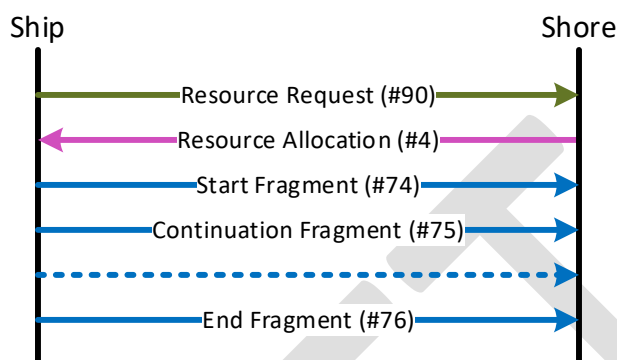


**Figure 31 - Ship originated broadcast outside control station service area sequence diagram**

#### C 4.28.3. SHIP ORIGINATED BROADCAST INSIDE CONTROL STATION SERVICE AREA

The sequence diagram for ship originated broadcast inside of control station service area is shown in Figure 32.

- Random Access Channel
- Announcement Signalling Channel
- Data Channel
- Data Signalling Channel



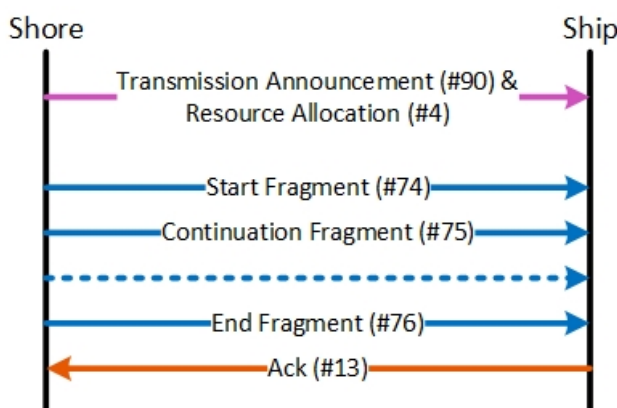
**Figure 32 - Ship originated broadcast inside control station service area sequence diagram**

#### C 4.28.4. SHORE TO SHIP ADDRESSED MESSAGE

The sequence diagram for shore to ship addressed message is shown in Figure 33. The transfer starts with a Resource Request/Transmission Announcement message to announce the source and destinations of the data session. In the same slot, a Resource Allocation message is transmitted to assign a Logical Channel to the data session. The diagram shows a large multi-fragmented data session. Up to 14 fragments are sent before the ship sends a selective NACK indicating which fragments have to be resent. The Logical Channel is kept allocated until all fragments have been received by the ship and an ACK has been received or a retry limit has been exceeded.

The datagram payload has source, destination and format encapsulated for routing and presentation purposes.

- Random Access Channel
- Announcement Signalling Channel
- Data Channel
- Data Signalling Channel



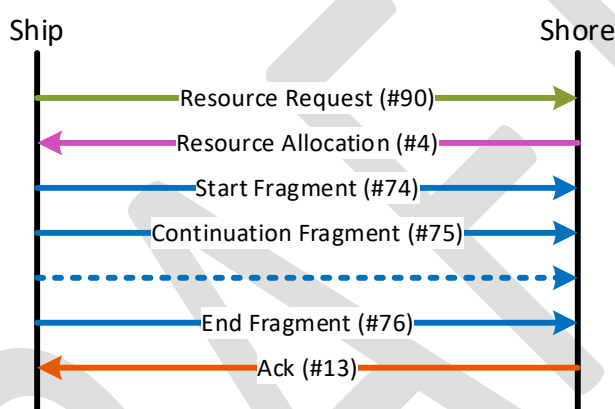
**Figure 33 - Shore to ship addressed message sequence diagram**

#### C 4.28.5. SHIP TO SHORE ADDRESSED MESSAGE

The sequence diagram for ship to shore addressed message is shown in Figure 34. The transfer starts with a Resource Request message to request a Logical Channel for the data session. The following Resource Allocation message is transmitted to assign a Logical Channel to the data session. The diagram shows a large multi-fragmented data session.

The datagram payload has source, destination and format encapsulated for routing and presentation purposes.

- Random Access Channel
- Announcement Signalling Channel
- Data Channel
- Data Signalling Channel



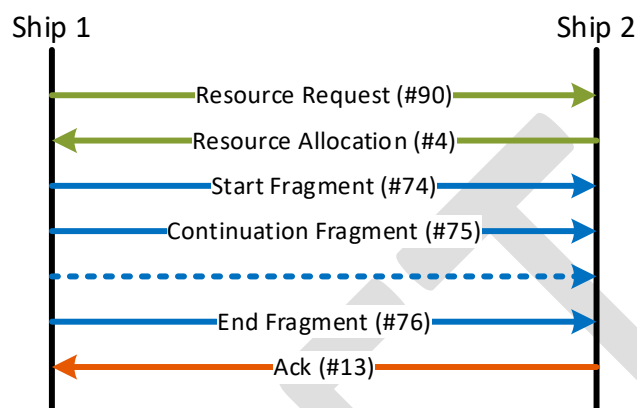
**Figure 34 - Ship to shore addressed message sequence diagram**

#### C 4.28.6. SHIP TO SHIP ADDRESSED MESSAGE OUTSIDE CONTROL STATION SERVICE AREA

The sequence diagram for ship to ship addressed message outside of control station service area is shown in Figure 35. The transfer starts with a Resource Request message to request a Logical Channel for the data session. The following Resource Allocation message is transmitted to assign a Logical Channel to the data session. The diagram shows a large multi-fragmented data session.

The datagram payload has source, destination and format encapsulated for routing and presentation purposes.

- Random Access Channel
- Announcement Signalling Channel
- Data Channel
- Data Signalling Channel



**Figure 35 - Ship to ship addressed message outside control station service area sequence diagram**

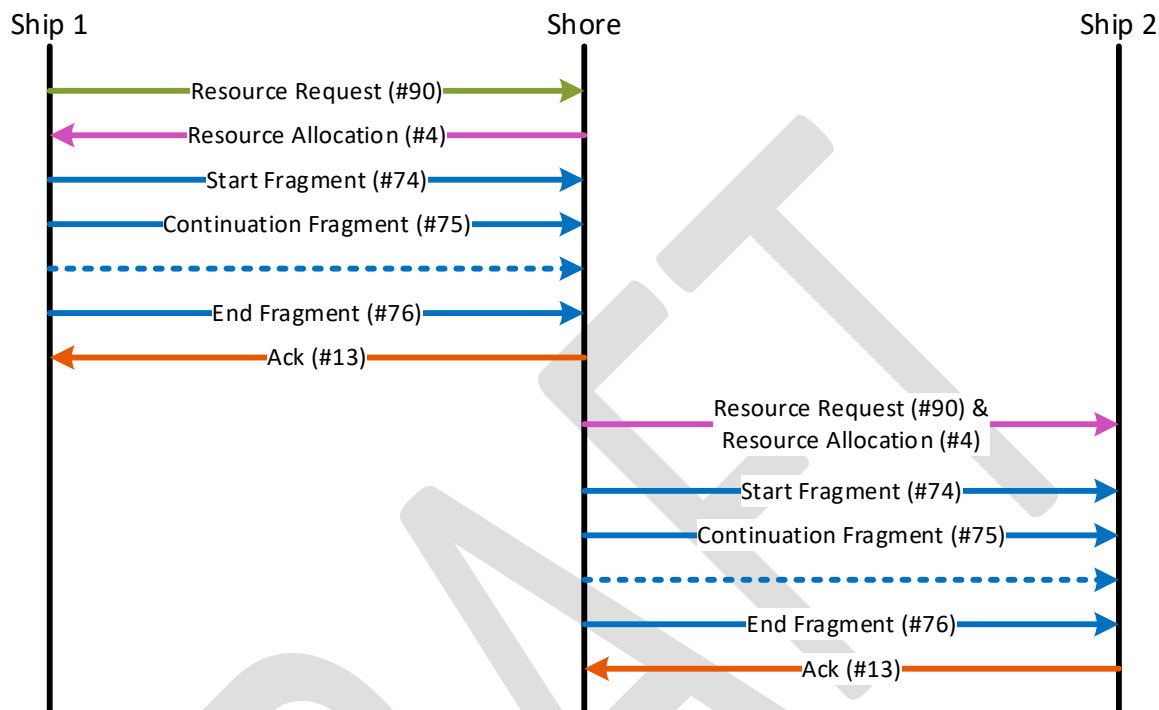
#### **C 4.28.7. SHIP TO SHIP ADDRESSED MESSAGE INSIDE CONTROL STATION SERVICE AREA**

The sequence diagram for ship to ship addressed message inside of control station service area is shown in Figure 36. The transfer starts with a Resource Request message to request a Logical Channel for the data session. The following Resource Allocation message is transmitted to assign a Logical Channel to the data session. The diagram shows a large multi-fragmented data session.

The datagram payload has source, destination and format encapsulated for routing and presentation purposes.



- Random Access Channel
- Announcement Signalling Channel
- Data Channel
- Data Signalling Channel



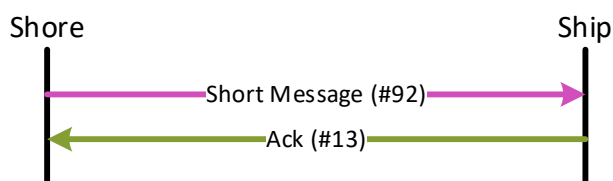
**Figure 36 - Ship to ship addressed message inside control station service area sequence diagram**

#### C 4.28.8. SHORE TO SHIP SHORT DATA MESSAGE

The sequence diagram for shore to ship short data message with ACK is shown in Figure 37. This protocol is used for short data messages that fit within a single transmission burst.

The ship sends and ACK when the message is received correctly, otherwise the shore may automatically retry until the retry limit is reached.

- Random Access Channel
- Announcement Signalling Channel
- Data Channel
- Data Signalling Channel

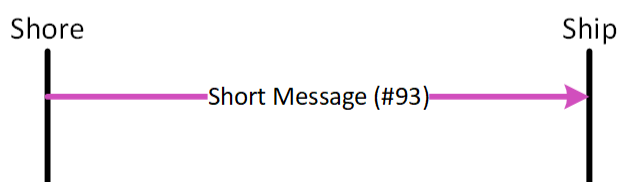


**Figure 37 - Shore to ship short data message sequence diagram**

The sequence diagram for shore to ship short data message without ACK is shown in Figure 38. This protocol is used for short data messages that fit within a single transmission burst.

The Destination ID of this message may be set to zero to use it as a short, efficient broadcast message.

- Random Access Channel
- Announcement Signalling Channel
- Data Channel
- Data Signalling Channel



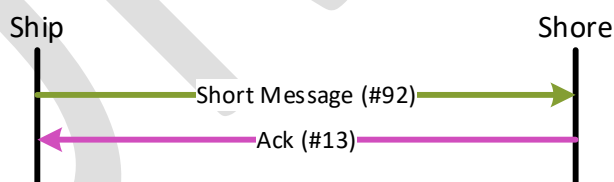
**Figure 38 - Shore to ship short data message sequence diagram**

#### C 4.28.9. SHIP TO SHORE SHORT DATA MESSAGE

The sequence diagram for ship to shore short data message is shown in Figure 39. This protocol is used for short data messages that fit within a single transmission burst. A random slot in the randomizing interval given in the MAC signalling is used for the transmission.

The shore sends an ACK when the message is received correctly, otherwise the ship may automatically retry until the retry limit is reached.

- Random Access Channel
- Announcement Signalling Channel
- Data Channel
- Data Signalling Channel



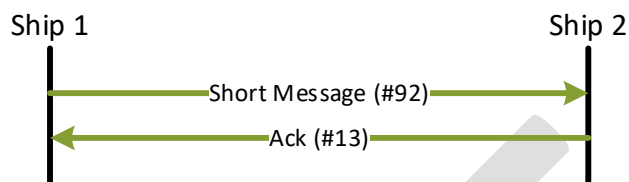
**Figure 39 - Ship to shore short data message sequence diagram**

#### C 4.28.10. SHIP TO SHIP SHORT DATA MESSAGE

The sequence diagram for ship to ship short data message is shown in Figure 40. This protocol is used for short data messages that fit within a single transmission burst. A random slot in the randomizing interval given in the MAC signalling is used for the transmission.

The receiving ship sends an ACK when the message is received correctly, otherwise the transmitting ship may automatically retry until the retry limit is reached.

- Random Access Channel
- Announcement Signalling Channel
- Data Channel
- Data Signalling Channel

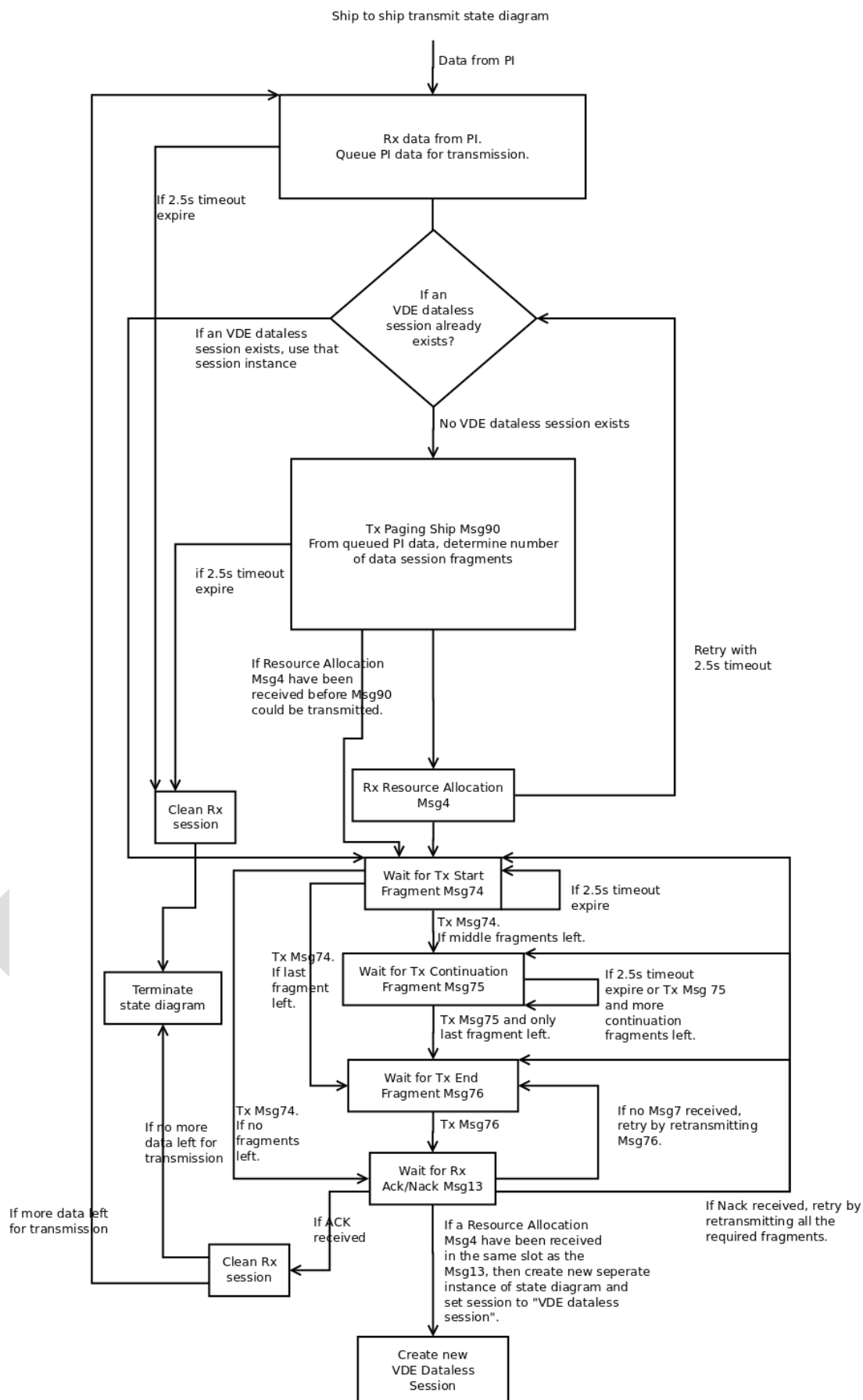


***Figure 40 - Ship to ship short data message sequence diagram***

## **C 4.29. DATA TRANSFER PROTOCOL STATE DIAGRAMS**

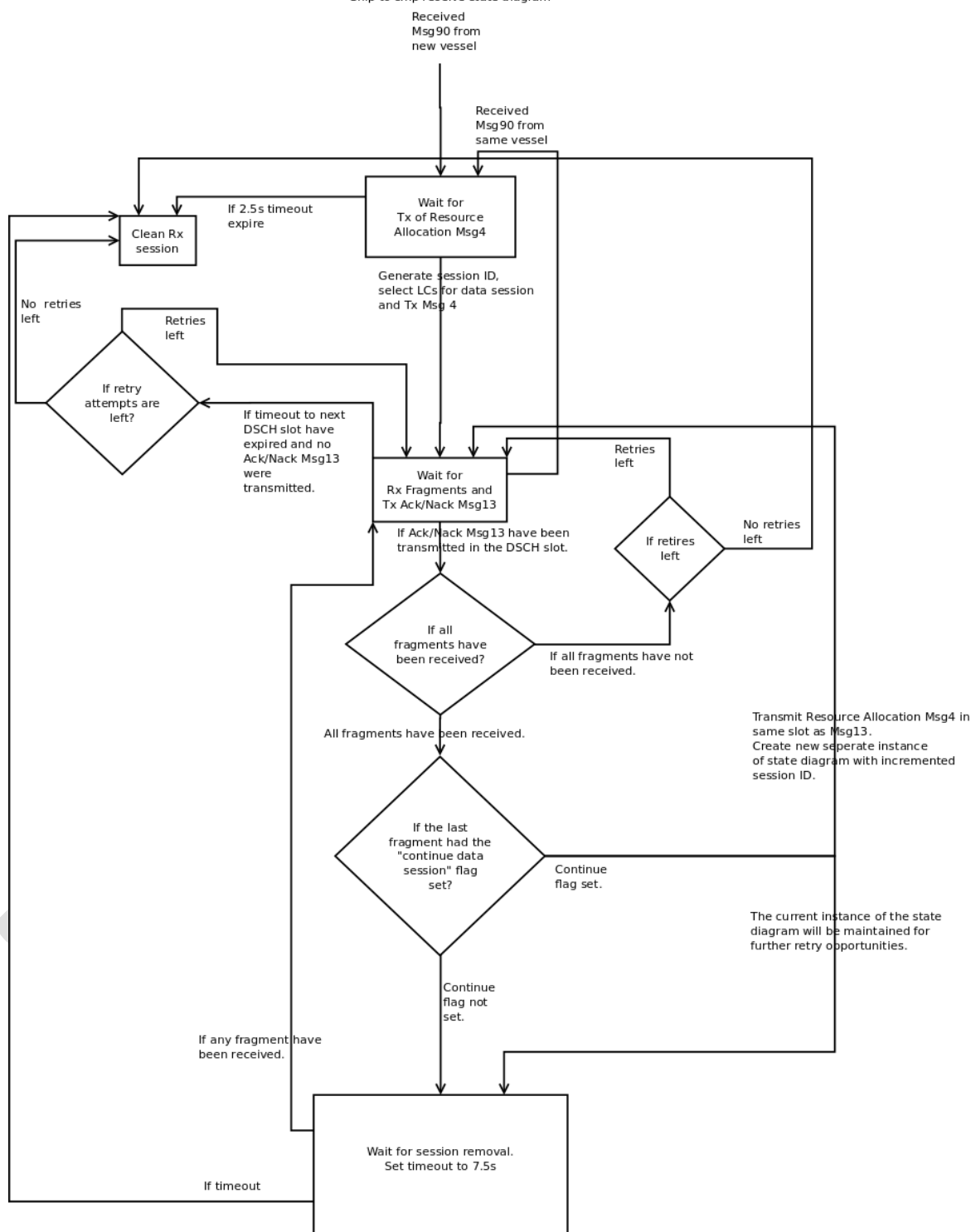
### **C 4.29.1. SHIP TO SHIP ADDRESSED MESSAGE OUTSIDE CONTROL STATION SERVICE AREA**

The state diagrams Figure 41 and Figure 42 shows an example of an implementation for the default PC and LC.



**Figure 41 - Example Addressed ship to ship transmit state diagram**

### Ship to ship receive state diagram

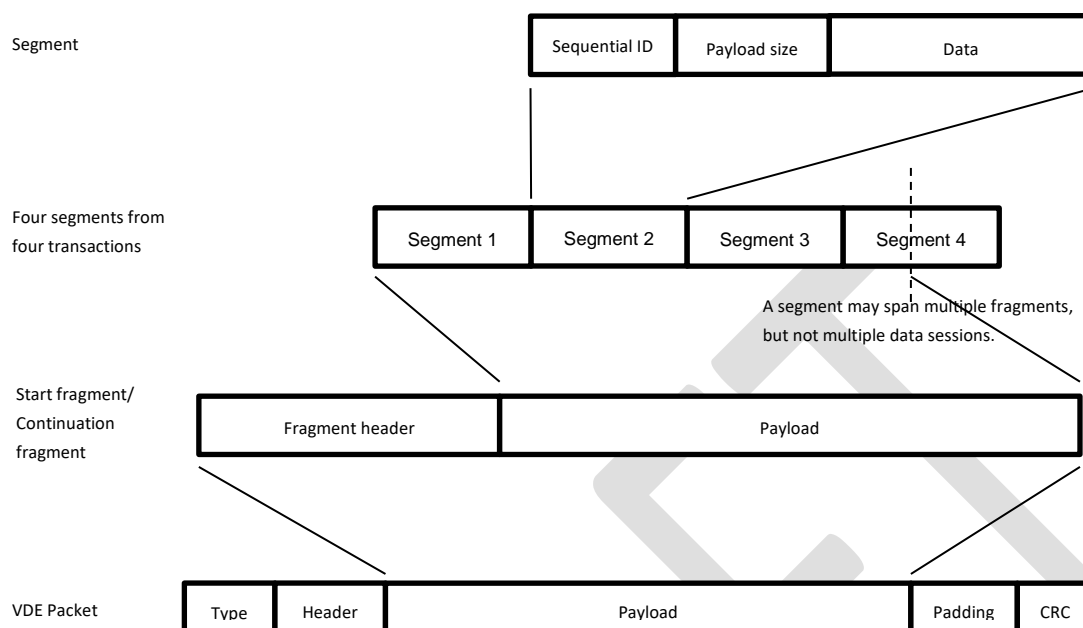


**Figure 42 - Example Addressed ship to ship receive state diagram**

### C 4.30. SEGMENTATION OF VDE PAYLOAD

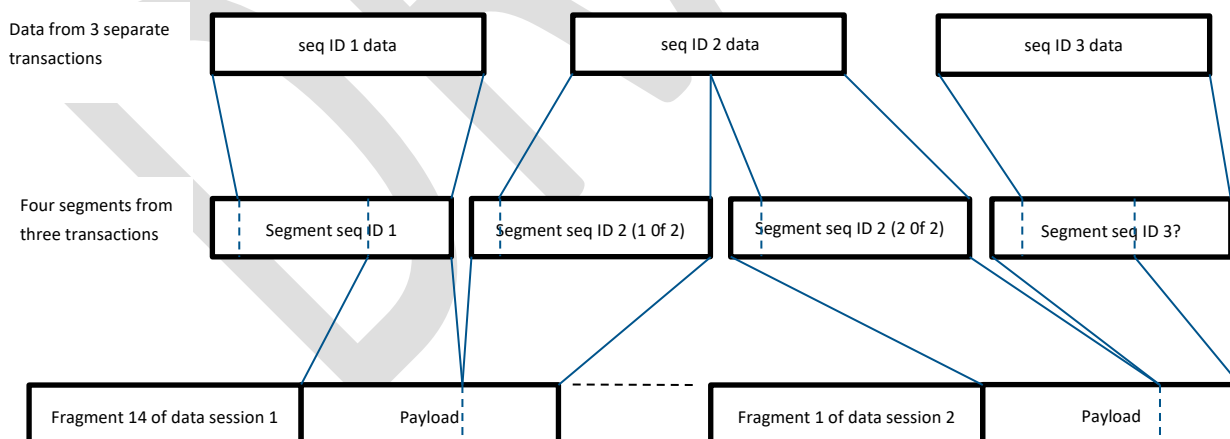
Data to be transmitted over VDE payload should be input to equipment via the PI by using applicable international standards. If the PI input results in need of executing multiple simultaneous transactions over VDL, the equipment should process them as described in this section.

VDE payload segments get packed inside the fragment as shown in Figure 43. Each segment denotes a part of data within a transaction. Transactions under simultaneous processing are identified by different sequential IDs included in the segment header.



**Figure 43 - Segmentation of VDE payload**

Segments may span multiple fragments, but not multiple data sessions. Only when a segment is found to span multiple data sessions, may the segment be split into multiple segments to align segments on data session boundaries. See Figure 44.



**Figure 44 - Segmentation across data session boundaries**

### C 4.30.1. SEGMENT DESCRIPTION

*Table 52 – Segment Description*

| Segment  |                 |             |               |  |
|----------|-----------------|-------------|---------------|--|
| Field no | Value (Dec)     | Size (Bits) | Function      | Content  |
| 1        | 0 to $2^{16}-1$ | 16          | Sequential ID | Sequential ID of matching data transaction     |
| 2        | 0 to $2^{16}-1$ | 16          | Payload size  | Size of the segment payload data only. (Bytes) |
| 3        |                 | Variable    | Payload Data  | Payload data.                                  |

## C 5. NETWORK LAYER

The priority assignment, distribution of transmission packets and data link congestion resolution requires close integration with the link layer. The responsibility of the network layer was therefore moved to the link layer.

## C 6. TRANSPORT LAYER

The reliable transmission of data segments, segmentation, acknowledgement and multiplexing requires close integration with the link layer. The responsibility of the transport layer was therefore moved to the link layer.

## C 7. SESSION LAYER

The session handling of PI sentence data requires close integration with the link layer. The responsibility of the session layer was therefore moved to the link layer.

## C 8. PRESENTATION INTERFACE LAYER

VDES supports a presentation interface to be specified in detail by the applicable international standards.

This information is contained in IALA G1139, but not in Recommendation ITU-R M.2092. This information section is provisional and is intended for guidance and is the subject of liaison with appropriate international bodies.

All VDE sentences transmitted and received will use “VE” as talker ID.

In Autonomous Data Transfer mode, all the VDE communication takes place on the data level. Only the data gets transferred over the presentation interface using the EDM and EDO sentences while all of the link layer communication takes place automatically.

### C 8.1. VDE DATA MESSAGE SENTENCE

EDM sentences are used for initiating VDE data transmission when the sentence is sent to the presentation interface. When data has been successfully received over the VDE radio frequency link, then EDM sentences are output over the presentation interface to contain the VDE data.

The EDM sentence resembles the use of the VDM AIS sentence.

*Sentence :*

```
$--EDM,<seq_nr>,<source_mmsi>,<dest_mmsi>,<data>,<fill_bits>,<S>,<nw_id>*<HH><CR><LF>
<seq_nr>           : Sequence number of the PI data session. (0-999)
<source_mmsi>      : MMSI of source. Only applicable when receiving VDE data over the
                    : RF link. When the EDM sentence is sent to the presentation
                    : interface, value is ignored and must be null.
<dest_mmsi>        : MMSI of destination. Null field implies broadcast.
<data>             : Encapsulated binary data to transmit. May contain a maximum of
                    : 498 bytes of data (or 664 chars).
                    : The data limitation is constrained by the payload limit of a
```



VDE data session when using the lowest data rate, because EDM payload can not currently span multiple VDE data sessions.

<fill\_bits> : Number of fill bits.

<S> : indicates satellite only, NULL if not used for satellite transport.

<nw\_id> : limits the satellite network id allowed for transport, NULL if not used for satellite transport.

<HH> : The checksum field.

<CR><LF> : Carriage return and line feed characters.

Example: \$VEEDM,3,987654321,123456789,13u?etPv2;0n: dDPwUM1U1Cb069D,0\*72

## C 8.2. VDE DATA MESSAGE SENTENCE OWN-VESSEL REPORT

EDO sentences are sent with every successfully transmitted data packet over VDE RF link. For each transmitted EDO sentence, an exact EDM will appear on the receiving side. (Except for sequence number value.)

The EDO sentence resembles the use of the VDO AIS sentence.

Sentence:

\$--EDO,<seq\_nr>,<source\_mmsi>,<dest\_mmsi>,<data>,<fill\_bits>\*<HH><CR><LF>

<seq\_nr> : Sequence number of PI data session. (0-999)

<source\_mmsi> : MMSI of source.

<dest\_mmsi> : MMSI of destination. Null field implies broadcast.

<data> : Encapsulated binary data received. May contain a maximum of 498 bytes of data (or 664 chars).

<fill\_bits> : Number of fill bits.

<HH> : The checksum field.

<CR><LF> : Carriage return and line feed characters.

Example: \$VEEDO,3,987654321,123456789,13u?etPv2;0n: dDPwUM1U1Cb069D,0\*70

## C 8.3. VDE DATA MESSAGE SENTENCE ACK/NACK

EAK sentence is used for ACK/NACK of each EDM sentence and is associated with the EDM sentence with the same seq\_nr and dest\_mmsi.

Sentence:

\$--EAK,<seq\_nr>,<dest\_mmsi>,<edm\_status>\*<HH><CR><LF>

<seq\_nr> : Sequence number of PI data session. (0-999)

<dest\_mmsi> : MMSI of destination. Null field implies broadcast.

<edm\_status> : EDM sentence status. 0-3

0 - Accepted in queue.

1 - Transmission success and successfully received by destination.

2 - Transmission failure.

3 - Transmission queue full. Retry later.

<HH> : The checksum field.

<CR><LF> : Carriage return and line feed characters.

Example: \$VEEAK,3,987654321,2\*40

## C 8.4. EPV COMMAND OR REPORT EQUIPMENT PROPERTY VALUE

EPV sentence as defined in IEC 61993-2 Annex E, but with the property identifiers shown in Table 53.



***Table 53 – Property identifier***

| Property identifier | Property meaning | Value range  |
|---------------------|------------------|--|
| 120                 | Link ID setting  | 0 – Autonomous Link ID<br>1-32 – Tx Link ID set as defined by<br>Table 8, Table 9, Table 10 and Table<br>11. |

DRAFT

## **ANNEX D**    **TECHNICAL CHARACTERISTICS OF VDE-SAT SERVICE IN THE VHF MARITIME MOBILE BAND**

### **D 1**            **INTRODUCTION**

This section describes those elements of the VDE-SAT that are unique to VDE-SAT operation. For those elements that are common, the cross reference into Annex A is provided. In this context, the following types of functionality are envisaged:

- Paging
- Satellite to ship broadcast multi-packet data transfer
- Satellite to ship addressed multi-packet data transfer
- Ship to satellite addressed multi-packet data transfer
- Satellite to ship short message
- Ship to satellite short message

In this annex low earth orbit (LEO) satellites with 600 km altitude are considered to present typical examples of VDE satellite solutions. It should be noted that other orbital selections are also possible according to the overall system design consideration.

The focus of this annex is to describe the physical layer of the OSI model as defined in Annex A. The overall description of the link, network and the transport layers is provided in Annex A.

### **D 2**    **PHYSICAL LAYER**

#### **D 2.1.**    **VHF DATA EXCHANGE SATELLITE COMPONENT KEY PARAMETERS**

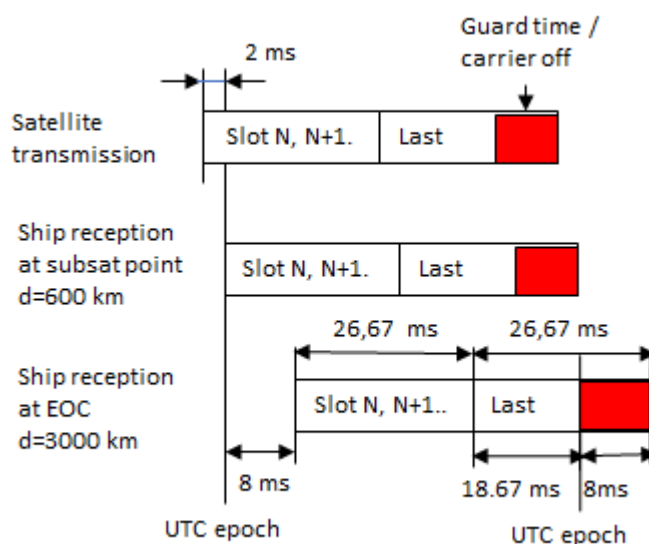
This section outlines key parameters regarding the VDE-SAT system that are common to for the uplink and downlink.

##### **D 2.1.1.**    **SATELLITE TO SURFACE DISTANCE RANGE**

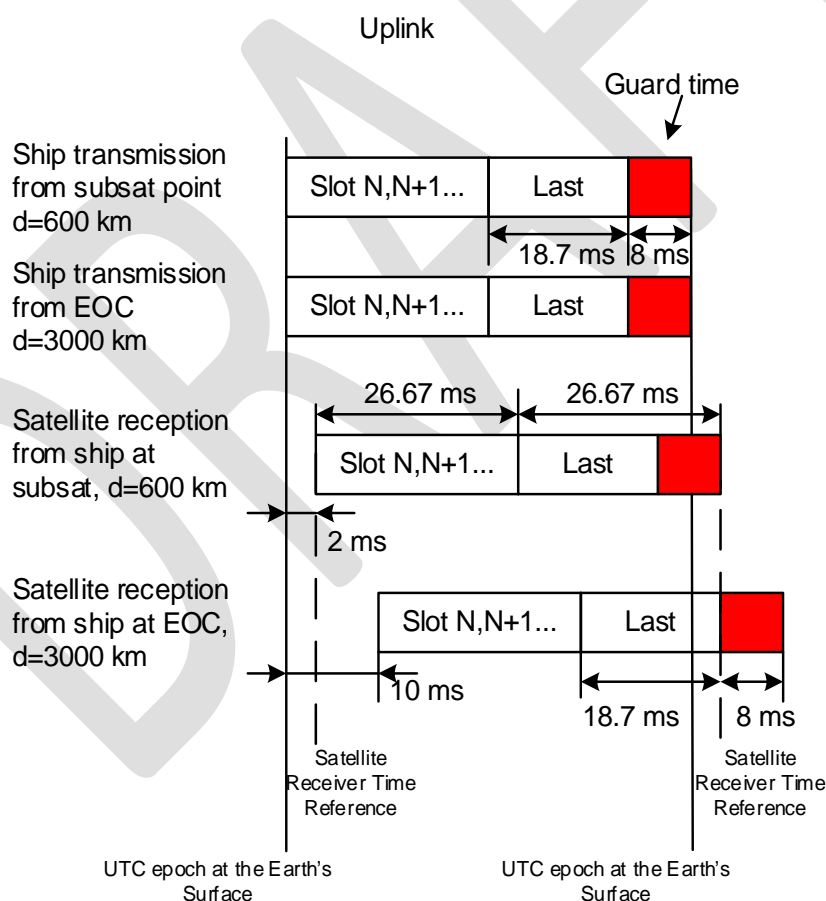
The orbit height determines the satellite range variations. For example, for a 600 km LEO the maximum range is 2 830 km. For timing purposes, a maximum range of 3 000 km will be used.

The minimum range is equal to the orbit height. For a LEO satellite at 600 km altitude the minimum range will be 600 km. This value is used to determine the minimum propagation delay time. Considering these exemplary values for the minimum and maximum ranges, the path delay will vary from 2 ms to 10 ms, a variation of 8 ms as shown in Figure 45 and Figure 46.

For the VDE-SAT downlink, in addition to the relative delays between signal receptions at a vessel from different satellites, there could be absolute delay due to other sources such as signal processing delay. The satellite service provider should pre-compensate for absolute delay, by transmitting packets 2 ms before UTC epoch and receive packets 2 to 8 ms after UTC epoch. This will cause half-duplex satellites to lose one slot when switching from receive to transmit.



**Figure 45 - VDE-SAT downlink timing**



**Figure 46 - VDE-SAT Uplink timing**

### D 2.1.2. SATELLITE TRANSMISSION CARRIER FREQUENCY ERROR

The transmit carrier frequency error at the satellite shall be less than 1 ppm, i.e.  $\pm 160$  Hz.

A LEO satellite will move at a speed of about 8 km/s and this will cause a maximum Doppler of  $\pm 4$  kHz at VHF.

### D 2.1.3. SHIP STATION TRANSMITTER REQUIREMENTS

For ship station transmitter requirements, see Annex A.

### D 2.1.4. SHIP STATION ANTENNA GAIN

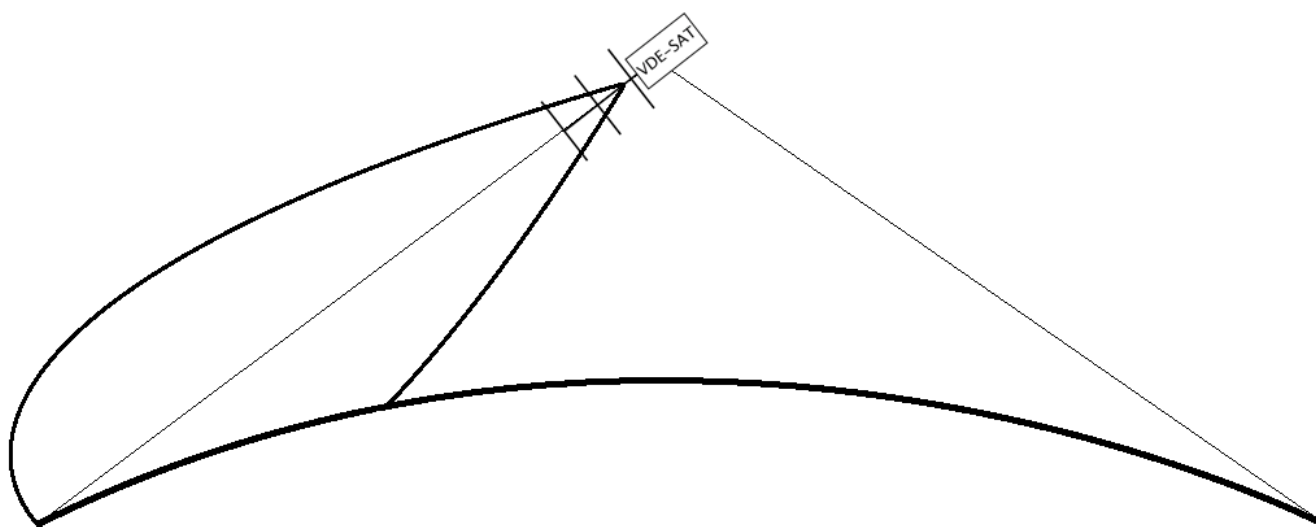
For ship station antenna gain, see Annex A.

### D 2.1.5. SHIP STATION NOISE PLUS INTERFERENCE LEVEL

For noise plus interference level of ship station, see Annex A.

### D 2.1.6. SATELLITE ANTENNA CHARACTERISTICS

A circularly polarized Yagi antenna, comprised of three elements, is used as an example for the satellite antenna. Figure 47, shows how the main lobe of Yagi antenna is pointed towards the horizon of the earth. The thin solid line indicates the field of view from the satellite, but the communications coverage area will be limited to the area within the main lobe of the Yagi antenna. Most of the satellite coverage area and visibility time will be at low elevation angles, and high elevation angle coverage may be sacrificed without significant system capacity loss. Assuming a peak antenna gain of 8 dBi, satellite antenna gain versus ship elevation angle and nadir offset angle are shown in Table 54. It is the responsibility of the VDE-SAT satellite operator to ensure that the pointing of the antenna and the e.i.r.p. are set in a manner which keeps the VDE-SAT downlink emissions within the pfd-mask limit specified in Section 3.1 of this recommendation when above areas with VDE-TER coverage.



**Figure 47 – Illustration showing how the Yagi antenna and its main lobe is pointed towards the horizon of the earth.**

**Table 54 – Satellite antenna gain versus ship elevation angle, nadir offset angle and boresight offset angle.**

| Ship elevation angle (deg) | Nadir offset angle (deg) | Boresight offset angle (deg) | Satellite antenna gain (dBi) |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 0                          | 66.1                     | 0                            | 8                            |
| 10                         | 64.2                     | 1.9                          | 8                            |
| 20                         | 59.2                     | 6.9                          | 8                            |
| 30                         | 52.3                     | 13.8                         | 7.8                          |
| 40                         | 44.4                     | 21.7                         | 6.9                          |
| 50                         | 36                       | 30.1                         | 5.5                          |
| 60                         | 27.2                     | 38.9                         | 3.6                          |
| 70                         | 18.2                     | 47.9                         | 0.7                          |
| 80                         | 9.1                      | 57                           | -2.2                         |
| 90                         | 0                        | 66.1                         | -5.5                         |

## D 2.2. TECHNICAL CHARACTERISTICS OF THE VHF DATA EXCHANGE SATELLITE COMPONENT DOWNLINK

This section outlines the technical characteristics, key parameters and typical link budgets for the VDE-SAT downlink.

### D 2.2.1. SATELLITE DOWNLINK EQUIVALENT ISOTROPIC RADIATED POWER

Section 3.1 provides a pfd-mask to ensure interoperability and compatibility between VDE-TER and VDE-SAT.

Table 55 shows the theoretical maximum satellite e.i.r.p. as a function of elevation angles for this mask.

**Table 55 – Maximum satellite maximum e.i.r.p. as a function of elevation angle**

| Ship Elevation angle $\theta$ (degrees) | pfd-mask on ground (dBW/m <sup>2</sup> /4 kHz) | Satellite range (km) | Inverse squared distance (dB) | pfd-mask at satellite antenna (dBW/m <sup>2</sup> /4 kHz) | Maximum satellite e.i.r.p |             |              |              |
|---|--|----------------------|-------------------------------|---|---------------------------|-------------|--------------|--------------|
|   |  |                      |                               |   | (dBW/4kHz)                | (dBW/50kHz) | (dBW/100kHz) | (dBW/150kHz) |
| 0                                       | -149.0   | 2 829                | -129.0                        | -20.0   | -9.0                      | 2.0         | 5.0          | 6.8          |
| 10                                      | -147.4   | 1 932                | -125.7                        | -21.7   | -10.7                     | 0.3         | 3.3          | 5.1          |
| 20                                      | -145.8   | 1 392                | -122.9                        | -22.9   | -11.9                     | -1.0        | 2.0          | 3.8          |
| 30                                      | -144.2   | 1 075                | -120.6                        | -23.6   | -12.6                     | -1.6        | 1.4          | 3.2          |
| 40                                      | -142.6   | 882                  | -118.9                        | -23.7   | -12.7                     | -1.7        | 1.3          | 3.0          |
| 50                                      | -139.4   | 761                  | -117.6                        | -21.7   | -10.7                     | 0.2         | 3.2          | 5.0          |
| 60                                      | -134.0   | 683                  | -116.7                        | -17.3   | -6.3                      | 4.7         | 7.7          | 9.4          |
| 70                                      | -133.0   | 635                  | -116.1                        | -16.9   | -6.0                      | 5.0         | 8.0          | 9.8          |
| 80                                      | -132.0   | 608                  | -115.7                        | -16.3   | -5.3                      | 5.6         | 8.7          | 10.4         |
| 90                                      | -131.0   | 600                  | -115.6                        | -15.4   | -4.4                      | 6.5         | 9.5          | 11.3         |

The maximum achievable satellite e.i.r.p. depends on the antenna on-board the satellite, and how well the antenna pattern can be made to fit the theoretical maximum satellite e.i.r.p. mask.

With the satellite antenna described in D 2.1.6, which has a peak antenna gain of 8 dBi, a transmit RF power of -9.4 dBW in 50 kHz will ensure compliance with the pfd-mask in defined in Section 3.1. Satellite e.i.r.p. and resulting margin to the pfd-mask as a function of ship elevation is shown in Table 56.

**Table 56 - Satellite e.i.r.p. and margin to the pfd-mask as a function of vs. elevation angle**

| Ship elevation angle (degrees) | Satellite antenna gain (dBi) | Satellite e.i.r.p. in circular polarization (dBW per 50 kHz) | Margin to maximum satellite e.i.r.p, i.e margin to the pfd-mask (dB) |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|--|--|
| 0                              | 8                            | -1.4   | 3.4  |
| 10                             | 8                            | -1.4   | 1.7  |
| 20                             | 8                            | -1.4   | 0.4  |
| 30                             | 7.8                          | -1.6   | 0.0  |
| 40                             | 6.9                          | -2.5   | 0.8  |
| 50                             | 5.5                          | -3.9   | 4.1  |
| 60                             | 3.6                          | -5.8   | 10.5   |
| 70                             | 0.7                          | -8.7   | 13.7   |
| 80                             | -2.2                         | -11.6  | 17.2   |
| 90                             | -5.5                         | -14.9  | 21.4   |

#### D 2.2.2. VHF DATA EXCHANGE SATELLITE COMPONENT DOWNLINK RECEIVER THRESHOLDS

The VDES maximizes frequency efficiency by using adaptive coding and modulation based on the actual link quality. Initial system access is done using a combination of spread spectrum, low bitrate and powerful forward error correction (FEC). The VDE-SAT uses the waveforms defined in Annex A. The thresholds  $C/N_0$  on a Gaussian channel have been estimated.

#### D 2.2.3. VHF DATA EXCHANGE SATELLITE COMPONENT DOWNLINK LINK BUDGET

The nominal signal level  $C/N_0$  and  $C/(N_0+I_0)$  for the VDE-SAT downlink as a function of elevation angle for a 50 kHz channel are provided in Table 57 for the satellite antenna described in D 2.1.6. In a 50 kHz channel a signal bandwidth of 42 kHz can be used, which allow a satellite transmitter RF output power of -10.2 dBW. A transmission frequency of 161.9125 MHz is used in the calculation of path loss. The ship antenna maximum gain is 3 dBi and the system noise temperature is 30.2 dBK as shown in Annex A. The noise density level ( $N_0$ ) will then be -168.4 dBm/Hz. On board ships there can be additional noise and interference sources which can raise the noise plus interference level ( $N+I$ ) up to -114.0 dBm in a 50 kHz channel, as documented in IEC 61139. This corresponds to a noise plus interference density level ( $N_0+I_0$ ) of -161 dBm/Hz.

The link budget shown in Table 57 is theoretical and does not take into account propagation effects such as multi-path which is documented in Section 8 of Report ITU-R M.2435-0.

**Table 57 - VHF data exchange satellite component downlink budget as function of elevation angle**

| Ship elevation angle (degrees) | Satellite EIRP in circular polarization (dBW) | Satellite range (km) | Path loss (dB) | Polarization loss (dB) | Ship antenna gain (dBi) | Carrier level at LNA (dBm in 50 kHz) | C/N <sub>0</sub> (dBHz) | C/(N <sub>0</sub> +I <sub>0</sub> ) (dBHz) |
|--------------------------------|---|----------------------|----------------|------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------------------|-------------------------|--|
| 0                              | -2.2  | 2 829                | 145.7          | 3                      | 3                       | -117.8                               | 50.5                    | 43.2                                       |
| 10                             | -2.2  | 1 932                | 142.4          | 3                      | 3                       | -114.5                               | 53.8                    | 46.5                                       |
| 20                             | -2.2  | 1 392                | 139.5          | 3                      | 2.5                     | -112.2                               | 56.2                    | 48.8                                       |
| 30                             | -2.4  | 1 075                | 137.3          | 3                      | 1                       | -111.6                               | 56.7                    | 49.4                                       |
| 40                             | -3.3  | 882                  | 135.5          | 3                      | 0                       | -111.8                               | 56.5                    | 49.2                                       |
| 50                             | -4.7  | 761                  | 134.3          | 3                      | -1.5                    | -113.4                               | 54.9                    | 47.6                                       |
| 60                             | -6.6  | 683                  | 133.3          | 3                      | -3                      | -115.9                               | 52.5                    | 45.1                                       |
| 70                             | -9.5  | 635                  | 132.7          | 3                      | -4                      | -119.1                               | 49.2                    | 41.8                                       |
| 80                             | -12.4   | 608                  | 132.3          | 3                      | -10                     | -127.7                               | 40.7                    | 33.3                                       |
| 90                             | -15.7   | 600                  | 132.2          | 3                      | -20                     | -140.9                               | 27.5                    | 20.1                                       |

## D 2.3. TECHNICAL CHARACTERISTICS OF THE VHF DATA EXCHANGE SATELLITE COMPONENT UPLINK

This section outlines the technical characteristics, key parameters and typical link budgets for the VDE-SAT uplink.

### D 2.3.1. VHF DATA EXCHANGE SATELLITE COMPONENT UPLINK RECEIVER THRESHOLDS

The VDES maximizes frequency efficiency by using adaptive coding and modulation based on the actual link quality. Initial system access is done using a combination of spread spectrum, low bitrate and powerful FEC. The VDE-SAT uses the waveforms defined in Annex A. The thresholds C/N<sub>0</sub> and C/(N+I) on a Gaussian channel have been estimated.

### D 2.3.2. SATELLITE SYSTEM NOISE TEMPERATURE

The satellite receiver noise temperature is shown in Table 58. The system noise temperature is 25.7 dBK, assuming no external interference.

**Table 58 - Satellite receiver system noise temperature**

|                               |        |        |
|-------------------------------|--------|--------|
| Antenna noise temperature     | 200.0  | K      |
| Feed losses                   | 1.0    | dB     |
| LNA noise figure              | 2.0    | dB     |
| LNA noise temperature         | 159.7  | K      |
| Feedloss noise temp. at LNA   | 56.1   | K      |
| Antenna noise temp. at LNA    | 158.9  | K      |
| System noise temp. at LNA     | 374.7  | K      |
| System noise temp. at LNA     | 25.7   | dBK    |
| Intrinsic noise power density | -202.9 | dBW/Hz |

### D 2.3.3. VHF DATA EXCHANGE SATELLITE COMPONENT UPLINK LINK BUDGET

Table 59 provide a link budget for the VDE-SAT uplink as a function of elevation angle for a 50 kHz channel with the satellite antenna described in Section D 2.1.6. In a 50 kHz channel a signal bandwidth of 42 kHz can be used. The ship antenna maximum gain is 3dBi and the ship terminal output power is 6 W, as provided in Annex A. Note that the different link configurations available for the VDE-SAT uplink have an average ship terminal output power levels ranging from 6 W to 12.5 W. A transmission frequency of 161.9125 MHz is used in the calculation of path

loss. The satellite receiver noise level is -202.9 dBW/Hz as provided in Section D 2.3.2. The link budget in Table 59 is theoretical and does not take into account propagation effects such as multi-path, which is documented in Section 8 of Report ITU-R M.2435-0, or interference from other services operating in the same frequency band.

**Table 59 – VHF data exchange satellite component uplink link budget.**

| Ship elevation angle (degree) | Ship antenna gain (dBi) | Ship e.i.r.p. (dBW) | Polarization loss (dB) | Path length (km) | Path loss (dB) | Satellite antenna gain (dBi) | Carrier level at LNA, including feed loss (dBW) | C/N0 (dBHz) |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------|------------------------|------------------|----------------|------------------------------|---|-------------|
| deg                           | dBi                     | dBW                 | dB                     | km               | dB             | dBi                          | dBW   | dB          |
| 0.0                           | 3.0                     | 10.8                | 3.0                    | 2 829            | 145.7          | 8.0                          | -130.9  | 72.0        |
| 10.0                          | 3.0                     | 10.8                | 3.0                    | 1 932            | 142.4          | 8.0                          | -127.6  | 75.3        |
| 20.0                          | 2.5                     | 10.3                | 3.0                    | 1 392            | 139.5          | 8.0                          | -125.2  | 77.6        |
| 30.0                          | 1.0                     | 8.8                 | 3.0                    | 1 075            | 137.3          | 7.8                          | -124.7  | 78.2        |
| 40.0                          | 0.0                     | 7.8                 | 3.0                    | 882              | 135.5          | 6.9                          | -124.9  | 78.0        |
| 50.0                          | -1.5                    | 6.3                 | 3.0                    | 761              | 134.3          | 5.5                          | -126.5  | 76.4        |
| 60.0                          | -3.0                    | 4.8                 | 3.0                    | 683              | 133.3          | 3.6                          | -128.9  | 73.9        |
| 70.0                          | -4.0                    | 3.8                 | 3.0                    | 635              | 132.7          | 0.7                          | -132.2  | 70.7        |
| 80.0                          | -10.0                   | -2.2                | 3.0                    | 608              | 132.3          | -2.2                         | -140.7  | 62.1        |
| 90.0                          | -20.0                   | -12.2               | 3.0                    | 600              | 132.2          | -5.5                         | -153.9  | 48.9        |

## D 2.4. BIT MAPPING

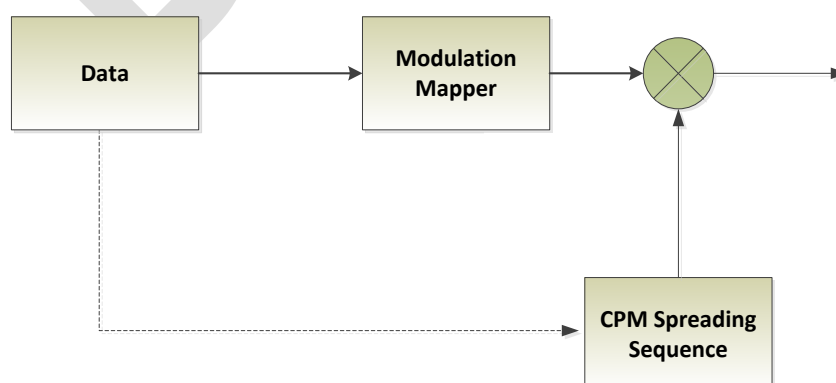
For bit mappings, see Annex A.

## D 2.5. SPREADING

Direct sequence spreading with constant envelope is applied for the physical layer burst format SAT-MCS-1.50-2, identified by Link ID 20. Spreading for the downlink burst waveforms carrying bulletin boards, Link ID 25 and Link ID 32 are achieved by utilising Gold sequences of length 2047. A short direct spreading sequence of length four is applied for the downlink burst waveforms defined by Link ID 28 and 29.

### D 2.5.1. SPREAD SPECTRUM WITH CONSTANT ENVELOPE

Direct sequence spreading with constant envelope can be implemented according to the spreading strategy [RD-3]. This provides a way to generate constant envelope signals whilst allowing the use of linear modulations (i.e. BPSK, or QPSK for data modulation). In this approach, the CPM spreading sequences are selected such that the spread symbols maintain quasi continuous phase even at the transition from one symbol to the next. The CPM spreading principle is provided in Figure 48.





**Figure 48 - CPM Spreading Principle**

In order to avoid phase discontinuity at the data symbol transitions, the proposed solution is to adapt the spreading sequence according to the modulating data. In other words, the CPM spreading sequence at the edge of each symbol is adapted according to the new input modulating symbol value to avoid, or minimize any phase discontinuity. Such a solution produces a small loss at the receiver as the receiver does not know the edge symbol part of the used CPM spreading sequence. For a spreading factor (SF) of 16 or higher, the resulting correlation loss experienced by the receiver due to this issue is less than 0.25 dB. Performance losses with respect to conventional spreading is thus quite negligible provided that SF = 16 or larger is used.

The CPM spreading sequences are computed and optimized off-line and then stored in the memory of the terminals and receivers. A single spreading code is sufficient for all the users in the system. There is thus no need for storing multiple spreading sequences but just a single spreading sequence.

The stored spreading sequence is then applied starting from the first preamble syncword symbol and continuing in the data part (as shown in Figure 49). The generated constant envelope spreading output sequence  $y(k)$  is given by

$$y(k) = \begin{cases} x(n) \cdot cp_a(l_a, p_a(n)), & \text{for } m < SL/2 \\ x(n) \cdot cp_e(l_e, p_e(n)), & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

where  $x(n)$  represents the QPSK modulated input signal of length  $BL$  symbols. Thus,  $n \in [0, BL - 1]$ . Bit mapping for QPSK modulation is defined by the green points that appear in Figure 11 showing the PI/4-QPSK constellation. It should be noted that the generated spreading sequence  $y(k)$  is actually partly dependent on the modulation symbols in order to ensure continuity of the signal phase when the modulation symbol changes (Figure 48). The spreading sequence to be generated is oversampled by a factor  $NS$  relative to the chip rate. The total number of constant envelope output samples then becomes  $BS = BL \cdot SF \cdot NS$ , where one single input QPSK symbol is spread to  $SL = SF \cdot NS$  output samples. The output sample index  $k$  is ranging from 0 to  $BS - 1$ , and the input symbol index  $n$  as function of the output sample index  $k$  is related by  $n = \lfloor k/SL \rfloor$ . Here the floor operator  $\lfloor u \rfloor$  rounds  $u$  down to the nearest integer towards minus infinity. Furthermore, two predefined two-dimensional complex valued tables,  $cp_a$  and  $cp_e$ , containing optimised constant envelope spreading signature sequences are utilised in the constant envelope spreading process. The table  $cp_a$  is applied for generating the spreading sequence for the first half of an input symbol, while  $cp_e$  is used for the second half, where a half symbol period consists of  $SL/2$  output samples. The present table to use, either  $cp_a$  or  $cp_e$ , is decided by the modulus index value given by  $m = k \% SL = k - SL \cdot \lfloor k/SL \rfloor = k - SL \cdot n$ , where  $\%$  defines a modulus operator. The first dimensional, representing sample time, table indexes  $l_a$  and  $l_e$  are given by  $l_a = (m + n \cdot SL/2) \% TL = (k - n \cdot SL/2) \% TL$  and  $l_e = (m + (n - 1) \cdot SL/2) \% TL = (k - (n + 1) \cdot SL/2) \% TL$ , where  $TL$  is the first dimensional size of the  $cp_a$  and  $cp_e$  tables. In our case, the spreading sequence is designed as maximum length, i.e.  $TL = BS/2$ ,  $l_a \in [0, BS/2 - 1]$  and  $l_e \in [0, BS/2 - 1]$ . The modulus  $TL$  in the timing index expressions is not needed. The second dimensional table indexes,  $p_a(n)$  and  $p_e(n)$ , depend on  $x(n)$  and are based on differential QPSK symbol quadrant computation. Given the applied Gray-coded QPSK bits-to-symbol mapping definition, the belonging quadrant is given by

$$q = \begin{cases} 0, & \text{for QPSK input bits equal to 11} \\ 1, & \text{for QPSK input bits equal to 01} \\ 2, & \text{for QPSK input bits equal to 00} \\ 3, & \text{for QPSK input bits equal to 10} \end{cases}$$

and the second dimensional table indexes

$$p_a(n) = \begin{cases} 0, & \text{for } n = 0 \\ (q(n) - q(n-1)) \% 4, & \text{for } n > 0 \end{cases}$$

and

$$p_e(n) = \begin{cases} (q(n+1) - q(n)) \% 4, & \text{for } n < BL - 1 \\ 0, & \text{for } n = BL - 1 \end{cases}$$

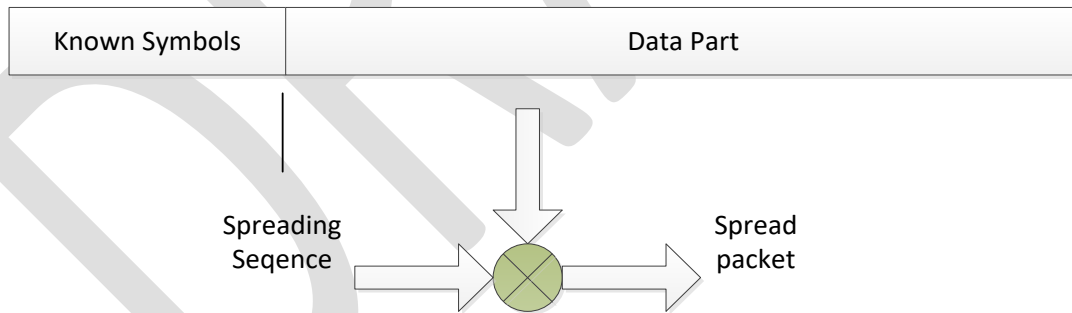
As the differential phase table indexes  $p_a(n)$  and  $p_e(n) \in [0, 3]$ , the overall size of the  $cp_a$  and the  $cp_e$  tables becomes  $BS/2 \times 4$ , thus containing  $2 \cdot BS$  complex valued constant envelope values.

The specified constant envelope spreading scheme is at present only applicable for the SAT-MCS-1.50-2 physical layer burst format, with Link ID equal to 20, for which  $BL = 261$  and  $SF = 16$ . The signature spreading sequences are optimised for an oversampling factor  $NS=16$ , and the  $cp_a$  signature table is stored in the ASCII file “cpa\_SF16\_NS16\_BL261.txt”, and the  $cp_e$  table is stored in the file “cpe\_SF16\_NS16\_BL261.txt”<sup>3</sup>. The table entities within the files are oriented in  $BS/2$  rows and 8 columns. The row number thus directly related to the first dimensional table indexes,  $l_a$  and  $l_e$ . The first, third, fifth and seventh columns contain the real part of the complex valued entities, while the second, fourth, sixth and eighth columns hold the imaginary part. The full relationship between a loaded ASCII file table,  $T[ ]$ , and a signature table  $cp( )$  becomes

$$cp(l, p) = T[l + 1, 2p + 1] + j \cdot T[l + 1, 2p + 2]$$

where  $j = \sqrt{-1}$  and the row and column of  $T[ ]$  are assumed counted from one.

Even if the signature sequences are optimised for  $NS=16$ , appropriate constant envelope spreading sequences for  $NS=8$  and  $NS=4$  can be generated by decimating the signature spreading tables in time, i.e. along the first dimensional table index, by a decimation factor equal to 2 or 4 correspondingly.



**Figure 49 – Proposed Spreading in the CPM**

<sup>3</sup> Signature spreading sequences are utilised such that quasi continuous phase is obtained for the generated direct sequence spreading signal. These signature spreading sequences, referred to as the  $cp_a$  and  $cp_e$  in section D 2.5, are found in the ASCII text files “cpa\_SF16\_NS16\_BL261.txt” and “cpe\_SF16\_NS16\_BL261.txt” respectively. The embedded files are not subject to IP restrictions.



cpa\_SF16\_NS16\_BL261.txt



cpe\_SF16\_NS16\_BL261.txt

## D 2.5.2. DIRECT SEQUENCE SPREADING FOR DOWNLINK WAVEFORMS

The waveform used for the bulletin board should allow for detection of overlapping signals received from two satellites. Two Gold spreading code sequences named SS0 and SS1 are selected to reduce the cross-correlation between delayed and frequency shifted versions of the overlapping waveforms. SS0 and SS1 is shown as byte oriented hexadecimal text strings in Table 60. The first byte, bit sequence “00000100” for spreading sequence SS0, is used to spread the very first syncword bit of the burst into 8 chips. The MSB of the bit sequence is to be transmitted first. The next byte, bit sequence “01100001” for SS0, is then used to spread the second bit of the burst. The spreading process making the chip sequence to transmit is further achieved by XORing between each burst bit and the 8 by 8 spreading sequence bits. As the length of the Gold spreading sequences is limited to 2047, only the 7 MSBs of the last Gold spreading sequence byte is utilised, i.e. “0101101” for byte 0x5A and “0001111” for byte 0x1E. Furthermore, spreading is based on periodic repetition of the spreading sequence, such that when reaching the end of the actual Gold sequence, the 8 bits sequence to utilise for spreading will consist of the 7MSBs of the last Gold sequence byte appending the MSB of the first byte. Due to this bit shift, the 8 by 8 spreading sequences obtained after repetition will not be equal to the original 8 by 8 spreading sequences.

The chip bit sequence is mapped into values by ordinary BPSK bit to symbol mapping.

**Table 60 – Gold spreading sequences**

| Name | Spreading Sequence  |
|------|---|
| SS0  | 04-61-4F-29-8E-A3-63-13-B4-81-44-3D-35-C9-BC-DF-06-05-D3-3E-A3-13-DE-DA-C9-37-F6-C0-2D-5A-81-B7-ED-4B-43-77-31-0D-DF-99-1C-49-E1-71-31-C1-12-30-58-9E-80-9E-AC-E7-83-AB-D8-9A-AD-24-56-89-BB-C2-37-EA-DB-49-F8-4D-80-B9-2C-E3-F1-98-1C-86-06-45-4C-31-25-68-6A-3F-1F-9B-62-CC-2D-42-4B-E1-9F-2C-0F-F0-84-4F-31-3C-B4-40-05-B6-FD-D2-D4-E8-63-A9-56-62-B6-08-80-DA-DD-07-AA-37-76-C7-8A-81-81-BD-95-31-79-E4-0D-EB-92-8C-A4-D1-A6-FF-45-47-C7-F9-09-D1-D2-2C-46-02-B1-B5-B2-83-6B-57-D0-BF-C3-4C-D6-2A-26-0A-EB-C1-D8-58-49-0A-FB-CF-DA-62-FD-41-60-FD-F7-0F-A2-8E-A4-90-B0-AD-37-FD-2E-E4-2B-75-E6-46-63-AB-FA-55-24-3D-93-CF-4E-72-CE-02-38-B7-77-95-97-30-86-7E-24-2E-80-81-C2-97-26-32-2A-71-90-CB-36-79-17-A5-D4-49-36-04-21-5F-1E-54-A2-88-D6-62-AD-E0-47-61-A7-89-ED-81-34-88-1A-D0-BE-5A |
| SS1  | 41-0B-57-66-A0-D1-94-36-C2-94-8C-60-10-FF-81-06-51-84-E3-80-EB-FE-B5-C2-26-5D-AE-A7-12-22-D2-94-18-CF-31-C0-3C-6A-C0-F5-47-EF-46-F6-02-BE-C2-22-53-DA-4A-62-8D-73-7B-48-B5-41-FB-E5-EE-62-D3-1B-40-7F-E3-72-E2-A3-AA-69-1E-FC-BD-D7-B2-A4-D3-75-72-29-EA-16-3A-DD-72-E0-70-27-05-B3-2D-7E-03-11-96-8F-14-75-2B-72-DA-BA-A7-B3-BF-DB-91-62-17-DD-E2-AE-49-E8-8C-DD-5E-36-54-F7-CE-8C-A6-72-66-32-A3-4C-88-A2-86-7F-2A-47-D8-00-54-38-7E-3D-15-CA-56-15-C8-A2-50-CB-0C-5C-FB-0E-9C-12-9A-B3-84-E7-F6-DE-42-B4-23-7C-91-55-EE-6D-A4-8B-90-CE-FE-C0-D0-13-9D-F7-81-9B-4C-D9-9D-1E-58-27-38-AD-C6-BE-BA-83-99-E9-93-2C-B7-C6-11-7E-40-D4-49-91-03-4D-F5-84-DD-BC-91-F7-11-92-E9-38-29-5F-BB-6F-2F-53-A5-97-33-FB-66-D3-41-D1-49-34-5F-6F-C0-20-56-6C-38-88-05-E1-47-C1-E3-A3-7D-9B-3A-CE-F1-78-1F-1E |

The direct spreading sequence “0010” is applied for the downlink burst waveforms identified by Link ID 28 and 29. This sequence has excellent auto-correlation property. The first bit of the burst is spread by “00”, the second by “10”, and then the third again by “00” as the spreading sequence are periodically repeated. XORing is performed between burst bits and 2 by 2 spreading sequence bits, and the resulting chip sequence is mapped into values by ordinary BPSK bit to symbol mapping.

## D 2.6. BASEBAND SHAPING AND QUADRATURE MODULATION

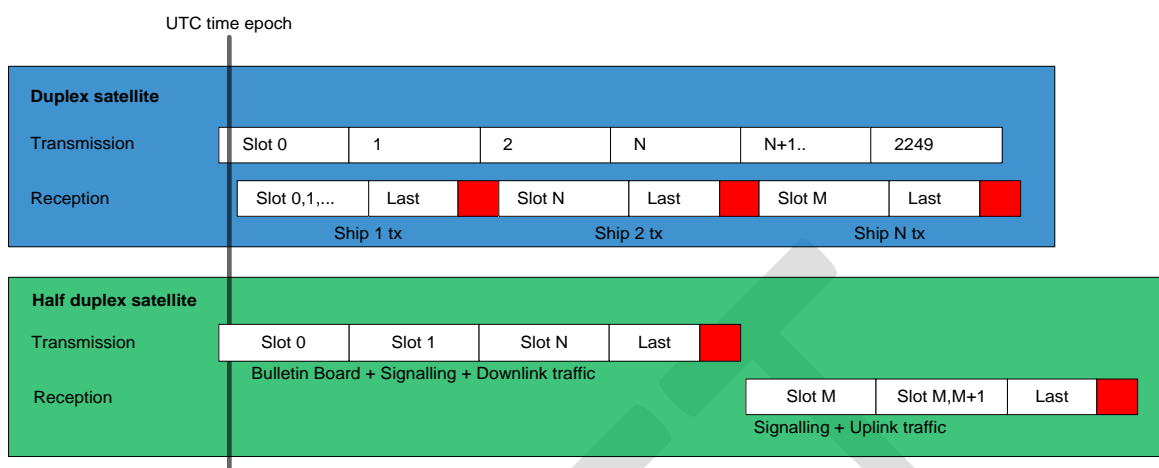
For baseband shaping of symbols, see Annex A.

## D 2.7. TRANSMISSION TIMING ACCURACY

For transmission accuracy figures, see Annex A.

## D 2.8. HALF DUPLEX AND FULL DUPLEX SATELLITES

The system can be configured for both half and full duplex satellites as shown in Figure 50.



**Figure 50 - Half-duplex and full duplex satellite operation**

## D 2.9. FRAME STRUCTURE

For frame and transmission burst structure, see Annex A.

### D 2.10. PILOTS AND SYNCWORD SYMBOL LOCATION AND MODULATION

Pilot symbols are utilised for some of the VDE-SAT uplink and downlink PL burst waveforms. A pilot symbol is a single symbol with unity power mapped to the constellation point  $\frac{(1+j)}{\sqrt{2}}$ . Single pilot symbols are regularly distributed over the burst, and the position of each pilot symbol is defined by the pilot distance. Denoting the pilot distance,  $d_p$ , the very first pilot symbol in the burst is located  $(1 + d_p)/2$  symbols after the last symbol of the preceding training sequence (syncword). When  $d_p$  is an even number,  $(1 + d_p)/2$  is rounded down to the nearest integer, towards minus infinity. For the VDE-SAT uplink PL format SAT-MCS-5.50, the syncword size is 27 symbols and the pilot distance is 33 symbols. Counting from zero, the last training sequence symbol is thus located at symbol position 26, the first pilot symbol is located at position 43, and the next pilot symbol at position 76.

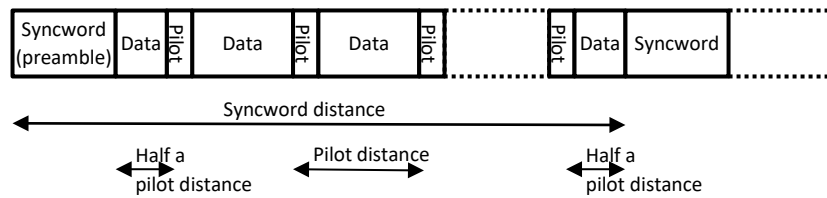
For VDE-SAT downlink, uniformly repeated syncword are utilised for synchronisation purpose as shown in Figure 51. The bit pattern sequence of a repeated syncword is equal to the preamble training sequence, as defined for VDE-SAT in Table 2. The location of the uniformly repeated syncwords are given by the syncword distance, defined as the distance between the first symbol of two subsequently syncwords. For the VDE-SAT downlink PL format SAT-MCS-0.50-1, the syncword distance is 1004 symbols. The first symbol of the preamble syncword and the first repeated syncword in such a burst waveform is thus located at position 0 and 1004 correspondingly. The last syncword for this PL burst waveform format is followed by 958 additional symbols.

Both uniformly repeated syncword and regularly distributed single pilot symbols are utilised for the  $\pi/4$  QPSK and 8PSK modulated VDE-SAT downlink burst waveforms. The location of the repeated syncword and distributed pilot symbols is given by the pilot distance and the syncword distance as previously outlined. The first pilot symbol following a given syncword is thus always located  $(1 + d_p)/2$  symbols after the last symbol of that particular syncword. For the VDE-SAT downlink PL format SAT-MCS-1.50-1 and SAT-MCS-3.50-1, both the syncword size and the pilot distance is 27 symbols, and the syncword distance is 2268 symbols. The last preamble syncword symbol is thus located at position 26, the first pilot symbol at position 40, and the next pilot symbol at position 67. The location of the last pilot symbol preceding the first repeated syncword becomes 2254, and the first repeated syncword symbol is located at position 2268. For both these PL burst waveform formats, the last syncword is followed by 3204 symbols, including single pilot symbols. The last single pilot symbol is followed by 31 symbols.

A generalised PL burst structure containing both uniformly repetitive syncword and regularly distributed single pilot symbols are visualised in the figure below. The distance  $(1 + d_p)/2$  is referred to as “half a pilot distance” in the figure. Varying number of symbols are following the last syncword and the last single pilot symbol for different PL formats. Some PL burst waveform formats have no symbols after the last syncword.

For PL burst waveform applying  $\pi/4$  QPSK, 8PSK and 16QAM modulation, the syncword is  $\pi/4$  QPSK modulated. Odd symbol position indexes are then mapped to symbol constellation points that are phase offset by +45 degree from the nominal QPSK symbol constellation points used for even symbol position indexes. This even and odd position indexes toggling rule, as described in A 1.2.8 and visualised in Figure 11, shall also be applied for the uniformly repeated syncword. This rule results in two different syncword modulation signal patterns for these particular PL burst waveforms when the syncword distance is an even number of symbols.

For  $\pi/4$  QPSK modulated PL burst waveforms, single pilot symbols located at odd symbol position indexes are phase offset by  $\pi/4$  from the nominal QPSK symbol constellation points as all other odd symbol positioned symbols in the actual burst.



**Figure 51 - General PL burst structure with repetitive sync word and distributed single pilot symbols**

## D 2.11. FORWARD ERROR CORRECTION AND INTERLEAVING

For forward error correction and interleaving, see Annex A.

## D 2.12. VDE-SAT LINK CONFIGURATION FORMATS

For link configurations available for the VDE-SAT uplink and downlink, see Annex A.

## D 2.13. VDE-SAT DOWNLINK BLOCK CHANNEL INTERLEAVER

A block channel interleaver is required on the VDE-SAT downlink to reduce the impact of short blockage on the channel (for example due to the AIS transmission from the vessel or fast fading events). The channel interleaver at the transmitter side is applied to the coded and scrambled data bits at the output of the bit scrambler, before possible adding of burst stuffing bits.

The channel interleaver is essentially randomly rearranging the scrambled bits. At the receiver side, the channel de-interleaver is performing the reverse operation. In the following, the channel interleaver is specified.

Blocks of scrambled data bits of length  $L$  are written by row into a  $M \times N$  matrix and read out by column after accomplished first row and then column permutations. The row and column permutations are given by

$$p_r(m) = 1 + (A_r \cdot m + C_r(n)) \bmod M, \text{ for } m = 1 \text{ to } M, \text{ where } C_r(n) = (B_r \cdot n - 1) \bmod M, \text{ for } n = 1 \text{ to } N$$

$$p_c(n) = 1 + (A_c \cdot n + C_c(m)) \bmod N, \text{ for } n = 1 \text{ to } N, \text{ where } C_c(m) = (B_c \cdot m - 1) \bmod N, \text{ for } m = 1 \text{ to } M$$

The interleaver is relocating the bit appearing at row  $p_r(m)$  to row  $m$ , and a bit appearing at column  $p_c(n)$  is relocated to column  $n$ .

As the burst length and the total number of bits to interleave are large for the burst waveforms identified by Link Config ID (LCID) 26-31, interleaving for these waveforms is split in either four or five smaller interleaver blocks,  $IB$ . The interleaver length  $L$  times the number of interleaver blocks  $IB$  match the number of “channel bits” as given in Table 10 and Table 11 (located in [RD2]).

The permutation parameters  $A_r$ ,  $B_r$ ,  $A_c$  and  $B_c$  and other interleaver parameters for the VDE-SAT downlink burst waveforms are specified in Table 61.

**Table 61 Channel interleaver parameters for VDE-SAT downlink burst waveforms**

| PL format      | SAT-MCS-0.50-1 | SAT-MCS-1.50-1 | SAT-MCS-3.50-1 | SAT-MCS-0.100 | SAT-MCS-0.150 | SAT-MCS-0.50-2 | SAT-MCS-0.50-3 | SAT-MCS-1.50-2 |
|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| LCID           | 25             | 26             | 27             | 28            | 29            | 32             | 33             | 34             |
| M              | 14             | 257            | 503            | 16            | 132           | 27             | 857            | 128            |
| N              | 683            | 119            | 114            | 1321          | 202           | 47             | 15             | 195            |
| L              | 9562           | 30583          | 57342          | 21136         | 26664         | 1269           | 12855          | 24960          |
| IB             | 1              | 5              | 4              | 4             | 5             | 1              | 1              | 1              |
| A <sub>r</sub> | 5              | 127            | 251            | 7             | 61            | 13             | 421            | 51             |
| B <sub>r</sub> | 3              | 107            | 223            | 13            | 31            | 17             | 367            | 89             |
| A <sub>c</sub> | 337            | 59             | 53             | 659           | 97            | 23             | 7              | 97             |
| B <sub>c</sub> | 71             | 41             | 11             | 59            | 59            | 13             | 3              | 19             |

## D 3 LINK LAYER

### D 3.1. LINK LAYER DEFINITIONS

#### D 3.1.1. PHYSICAL CHANNEL

A Physical Channel is defined by a frequency and bandwidth.

#### D 3.1.2. CHANNEL PAIR

A Channel Pair is a combination of two physical channels that are used together.

#### D 3.1.3. LOGICAL CHANNEL

Logical Channels define functions for a set of continuous slots.

#### D 3.1.4. VDE SLOTMAP

A VDE Slotmap is defined for each Channel Pair, defining the logical channel configuration over a 2250 slot frame.

#### D 3.1.5. BULLETIN BOARD

The bulletin board message is sent by the satellite to define six Channels Pairs, each with its associated VDE Slotmap.

#### D 3.1.6. SHORT DATA MESSAGE

See C 4.2.5.

#### D 3.1.7. DATA SESSION

A Data Session is a managed data transfer using assigned resources. A data session is uniquely identified by a source, destination MMSI combination and Session ID.

#### D 3.1.8. DATA FRAGMENT

See C 4.2.8.

### D 3.2. RESOURCE MANAGEMENT

The data session connection between ship and satellite is session oriented with a data Logical Channel and an DSCH Logical Channel being reserved for a station for a given time.



Ship originated short data messages can be sent on the RAC without resource allocation.

Satellite originated short data messages can be sent on the ASC without resource allocations.

During heavy network loading, the satellite may increase the selection interval for random access or modify the maximum allowed number of ship originated short data messages. This is done using the Media Access Control (MAC) message.

### **D 3.3. ENDIANNESS**

---

See C 4.5.

### **D 3.4. DATA STRUCTURES**

---

See C 4.6.

### **D 3.5. SLOT FUNCTIONS**

---

#### **D 3.5.1. SATELLITE BULLETIN BOARD SIGNALLING CHANNEL**

The downlink satellite bulletin board signalling channel (BBSC) is used for resource configuration of satellite information, frequencies, timeslots and logical channels. All ships must always listen to all BBSC channels. Link ID 32 must always be used.

#### **D 3.5.2. ANNOUNCEMENT SIGNALLING CHANNEL**

The downlink announcement signalling channel (ASC) is used for media access control, paging, resource allocation, data broadcast. All ships must listen to all ASC channels. Link ID 32 must always be used.

#### **D 3.5.3. DATA ACKNOWLEDGEMENT SIGNALLING CHANNEL**

The data acknowledgement channel (DSCH) is used for acknowledgments of downlink data. Link ID 20 must always be used on this uplink channel.

#### **D 3.5.4. RANDOM ACCESS CHANNEL**

The uplink random access channel (RAC) is used for resource request, paging response and short messages. Link ID 20 must always be used.

#### **D 3.5.5. DATA UP OR DOWN CHANNEL**

The data channel (DC) is used for data uplink or downlink. The Link ID is assigned by the resource allocation message.

#### **D 3.5.6. EMPTY CHANNEL**

As overlapping bandwidths are feasible, by assigning a channel as not used, it can indicate when a channel should not interfere with other channels.

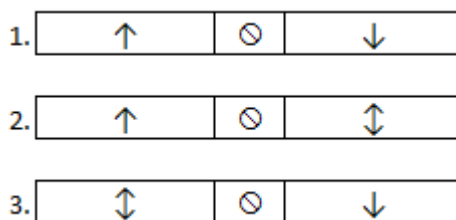
### **D 3.6. GUARD SLOT**

---

When the satellite switches from uplink to downlink (see D 2.1.1), one slot is lost before the change-over. During the bulletin board logical channel slot size assignment, one additional guard slot must automatically be added to the Slotmap by each ship under any of the following conditions, as illustrated in Figure 52

1. When a slot functions change from uplink to downlink.
2. When a slot function changes from uplink to a slot function that can be used for both uplink or downlink.
3. When a slot function changes from a slot function that can be used for both uplink or downlink to downlink.





**Figure 52: Use of guard slot**

If any of the above conditions are met, one guard slot must be added to the logical channel slot size before the change-over condition. For each guard slot added, a slot must be removed from another logical channel to allow all the slots to fit into a frame of 2250 slots. Remove slots as follows:

- If the slot function before the change-over event is RAC, remove the last slot from that RAC logical channel.
- Otherwise remove the slot from the next RAC logical channel.

To minimise the required amount of guard slots, any slot functions used for both uplink and downlink must always be used for downlink first, before switching over to uplink. This rule will ensure that if a slot is lost due to the Satellite switching from uplink to downlink, then the lost slot will always fall inside a guard slot and not inside the Logical Channel.

### D 3.7. VDE-SAT DEFAULT BULLETIN BOARD

The default VDE-SAT bulletin board defines six Channel Pairs, labelled A to F, each with an associated VDE slotmap. The default channel pairs have been defined to support the frequencies and bandwidths allocated for VDE-SAT services, as detailed in Table 62.

**Table 62: Default VDE-SAT Channel Pairs**

| Channel Pair | Uplink             |              |           | Downlink                              |              |           |
|--------------|--------------------|--------------|-----------|---------------------------------------|--------------|-----------|
|              | Channel            | Frequency    | Bandwidth | Channel                               | Frequency    | Bandwidth |
| A            | 1226 : (1026+1086) | 157,3125 MHz | 50 kHz    | 2226: (2026+2086)                     | 161,9125 MHz | 50 kHz    |
| B            | 2226: (2026+2086)  | 161,9125 MHz | 50 kHz    | 1226: (1026+1086)                     | 157,3125 MHz | 50 kHz    |
| C            | 1225: (1025+1085)  | 157,2625 MHz | 50 kHz    | 2284: (2024+2084+2025+2085)           | 161,8375 MHz | 100 kHz   |
| D            | 2225: (2025+2085)  | 161,8625 MHz | 50 kHz    | 1284: (1024+1084+1025+1085)           | 157,2375 MHz | 100 kHz   |
| E            | 1224: (1024+1084)  | 157,2125 MHz | 50 kHz    | 2225: (2024+2084+2025+2085+2026+2086) | 161,8625 MHz | 150 kHz   |
| F            | 2224: (2024+2084)  | 161,8125 MHz | 50 kHz    | 1225: (1024+1084+1025+1085+1026+1086) | 157,2625 MHz | 150 kHz   |

| Lower band |      |      |      |      |      |      | Upper band |      |      |      |      |      |      |
|------------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| Channel No | 1024 | 1084 | 1025 | 1085 | 1026 | 1086 |            | 2024 | 2084 | 2025 | 2085 | 2026 | 2086 |
| Uplink     | E    |      | C    |      | A    |      |            | F    |      | D    |      | B    |      |
| Downlink   | D    |      |      |      | B    |      |            | C    |      |      |      | A    |      |
|            | F    |      |      |      |      |      |            | F    |      |      |      |      |      |

The VDE slotmap for Channel Pairs A and B are illustrated in Figure 53. These slot maps contain the BBSC and ASC channels, as the channel pair is assigned to the 50kHz physical channels, 2026 / 2086 or 1026 / 1086.

| Channel Types |   | Channel direction |                    |
|---------------|---|-------------------|--------------------|
| BBSC          | Bulletin Board Signalling Channel       | ↓                 | Downlink           |
| RAC           | Random Access Signalling Channel        | ↑                 | Uplink             |
| ASC           | Announcement Signalling Channel         | ↕                 | Uplink or Downlink |
| DSCH          | Data Acknowledgement Signalling Channel | ⊘                 | Do not use         |
| DC            | Data Up or Down Channel                 |                   |                    |
| GS            | Guard slot                              |                   |                    |
| EMPTY         | Empty                                   |                   |                    |

| Channel Pair | Logical channels |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |  |
|--------------|------------------|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|--|
| A            | 0                | 1  | 2  | 3  | 4  | 5  | 6  | 7  | 8  | 9  |  |
| B            | 12               | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 |  |

|                      | Slot Functions |       |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |       |      |
|----------------------|----------------|-------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------|------|
|                      | ↓ BBSC         | ↓ ASC | ↕ DC 0 | ↕ DC 1 | ↕ DC 2 | ↕ DC 3 | ↕ DC 4 | ↕ DC 5 | ↑ DSCH | ↑ RAC | ⊘ GS |
| Slot offset in frame | 0              | 90    | 180    | 210    | 300    | 390    | 480    | 570    | 600    | 630   | 809  |
| Size in slots        | 90             | 90    | 30     | 90     | 90     | 90     | 90     | 30     | 30     | 179   | 1    |
|                      |                | ↓ ASC | ↕ DC 0 | ↕ DC 1 | ↕ DC 2 | ↕ DC 3 | ↕ DC 4 | ↕ DC 5 | ↑ DSCH | ↑ RAC | ⊘ GS |
| Slot offset in frame |                | 810   | 900    | 930    | 1020   | 1110   | 1200   | 1290   | 1320   | 1350  | 1529 |
| Size in slots        |                | 90    | 30     | 90     | 90     | 90     | 90     | 30     | 30     | 179   | 1    |
|                      |                | ↓ ASC | ↕ DC 0 | ↕ DC 1 | ↕ DC 2 | ↕ DC 3 | ↕ DC 4 | ↕ DC 5 | ↑ DSCH | ↑ RAC | ⊘ GS |
| Slot offset in frame |                | 1530  | 1620   | 1650   | 1740   | 1830   | 1920   | 2010   | 2040   | 2070  | 2249 |
| Size in slots        |                | 90    | 30     | 90     | 90     | 90     | 90     | 30     | 30     | 179   | 1    |

**Figure 53: VDE-SAT Slotmap for Channel Pair A & B**

The Slotmap for the remaining Channel Pairs C to F are illustrated in Figure 54. Note that the first two logical channels are marked as not used, as these would overlap with SBB and resource allocation messages.

| Channel Types |   | Channel direction |                    |
|---------------|---|-------------------|--------------------|
| BBSC          | Bulletin Board Signalling Channel       | ↓                 | Downlink           |
| RAC           | Random Access Signalling Channel        | ↑                 | Uplink             |
| ASC           | Announcement Signalling Channel         | ↕                 | Uplink or Downlink |
| DSCH          | Data Acknowledgement Signalling Channel | ⊙                 | Do not use         |
| DC            | Data Up or Down Channel                 |                   |                    |
| GS            | Guard slot                              |                   |                    |
| EMPTY         | Empty                                   |                   |                    |

| Channel Pair         | Logical channels |         |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |       |      |
|----------------------|------------------|---------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------|------|
| C                    | 24               | 25      | 26     | 27     | 28     | 29     | 30     | 31     | 32     | 33    |      |
| D                    | 36               | 37      | 38     | 39     | 40     | 41     | 42     | 43     | 44     | 45    |      |
| E                    | 48               | 49      | 50     | 51     | 52     | 53     | 54     | 55     | 56     | 57    |      |
| F                    | 60               | 61      | 62     | 63     | 64     | 65     | 66     | 67     | 68     | 69    |      |
|                      |                  |         |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |       |      |
|                      | Slot Functions   |         |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |       |      |
|                      | ⊙ EMPTY          | ⊙ EMPTY | ↕ DC 0 | ↕ DC 1 | ↕ DC 2 | ↕ DC 3 | ↕ DC 4 | ↕ DC 5 | ↑ DSCH | ↑ RAC | ⊙ GS |
| Slot offset in frame | 0                | 90      | 180    | 210    | 300    | 390    | 480    | 570    | 600    | 630   | 809  |
| Size in slots        | 90               | 90      | 30     | 90     | 90     | 90     | 90     | 30     | 30     | 179   | 1    |
|                      |                  |         |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |       |      |
|                      |                  | ⊙ EMPTY | ↕ DC 0 | ↕ DC 1 | ↕ DC 2 | ↕ DC 3 | ↕ DC 4 | ↕ DC 5 | ↑ DSCH | ↑ RAC | ⊙ GS |
| Slot offset in frame |                  | 810     | 900    | 930    | 1020   | 1110   | 1200   | 1290   | 1320   | 1350  | 1529 |
| Size in slots        |                  | 90      | 30     | 90     | 90     | 90     | 90     | 30     | 30     | 179   | 1    |
|                      |                  |         |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |       |      |
|                      |                  | ⊙ EMPTY | ↕ DC 0 | ↕ DC 1 | ↕ DC 2 | ↕ DC 3 | ↕ DC 4 | ↕ DC 5 | ↑ DSCH | ↑ RAC | ⊙ GS |
| Slot offset in frame |                  | 1530    | 1620   | 1650   | 1740   | 1830   | 1920   | 2010   | 2040   | 2070  | 2249 |
| Size in slots        |                  | 90      | 30     | 90     | 90     | 90     | 90     | 30     | 30     | 179   | 1    |

Figure 54 VDE-SAT Slotmap for Channel Pair C to F

### D 3.8. USE OF THE DATA ACKNOWLEDGEMENT SIGNALLING CHANNEL

The Data Acknowledgement Signalling Channel (DSCH) is divided into sub-channels, where each sub-channel supports the acknowledgement of a specific Data Channel. See Figure 55. When the satellite transmits large data messages to a ship on an assigned Data Channel, these are divided into fragments that are selectively acknowledged on a dedicated uplink DSCH sub-channel. There is one DSCH sub-channel for each Downlink Data Channel. For the default SBB, 30 slots are allocated to this every 20 s. The ACK for Data Channel 0 is transmitted in the first 5 slots (starting at slot 600 using the 5 slot Link ID 20), the ACK for Data Channel 1 to 5 are transmitted in the consecutive DSCH sub-channels.

Note that the number of available DSCH sub-channel should always match the number of Data Channels. Data Channel direction is given in the assignment message, uplink data transfers use the upper Data Channels (e.g. DC 5) to group downlink and uplink DCs to minimise the number of Guard Slots.

|                      |        |       |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |       |      |
|----------------------|--------|-------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------|------|
|                      | ↓ BBSC | ↓ ASC | ↕ DC 0 | ↕ DC 1 | ↕ DC 2 | ↕ DC 3 | ↕ DC 4 | ↕ DC 5 | ↑ DSCH | ↑ RAC | ⊙ GS |
| Slot offset in frame | 0      | 90    | 180    | 210    | 300    | 390    | 480    | 570    | 600    | 630   | 809  |
| Size in slots        | 90     | 90    | 30     | 90     | 90     | 90     | 90     | 30     | 30     | 179   | 1    |

|                      |     |     |     |     |     |     |
|----------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| DSCH sub-channel     | 1   | 2   | 3   | 4   | 5   | 6   |
| Slot offset in frame | 600 | 605 | 610 | 615 | 620 | 625 |
| Size in slots        | 5   | 5   | 5   | 5   | 5   | 5   |

Figure 55 Mapping of DSCH sub-channels

### D 3.9. VDE-SAT MESSAGE SUMMARY

*Table 63 VDE-SAT Message Summary*

| Type               | Name                                 | Description  | Slot Function |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------|--|---------------|
| 1                  | Satellite Bulletin Board 1           | Satellite bulletin board fragment 1  | BBSC          |
| 2                  | Satellite Bulletin Board 2           | Satellite bulletin board fragment 2  | BBSC          |
| 3                  | Satellite Bulletin Board 3           | Satellite bulletin board fragment 3  | BBSC          |
| 4                  | Satellite Bulletin Board 4           | Satellite bulletin board fragment 4  | BBSC          |
| 5                  | Satellite Bulletin Board 5           | Satellite bulletin board fragment 5  | BBSC          |
| 6                  | Satellite Bulletin Board 6           | Satellite bulletin board fragment 6  | BBSC          |
| 10                 | Media access control                 | Changes random access selection interval, max ARQ retries.   | BBSC, ASC     |
| 11                 | Paging                               | Pages a ship.  | ASC           |
| 12                 | Resource allocation                  | Allocated LC resource to data session.   | ASC           |
| 13                 | Uplink Acknowledgement               | Acknowledgement or negative-acknowledgement of uplink data fragments.                              | ASC           |
| 14                 | Downlink short message (with ack)    | Short data message to ship that requires acknowledgement   | ASC           |
| 16                 | Downlink short message (without ack) | Short data message to ship with no acknowledgement.  | ASC           |
| 18                 | End Delivery Notification to ship    | Message from application layer to acknowledge that the session was finished.                       | ASC           |
| 20                 | Resource request                     | Request resource from ship.  | RAC           |
| 21                 | Paging response                      | Paging response.   | RAC           |
| 22                 | End Delivery Notification from ship  | ACK to Short Downlink Message/Message from ship application that a message (session) was received. | RAC           |
| 33                 | Uplink short message (with ack)      | Short data message from ship with acknowledgement.   | RAC           |
| 23                 | Uplink short message (without ack)   | Short data message from ship with no acknowledgement.  | RAC           |
| 24, 25, 26, 27, 28 | Uplink short message (without ack)   | 5 bytes of data to satellite pre-configured destinations.  | RAC           |
| 29                 | Downlink Acknowledgement             | Selective acknowledgement of downlink data fragments.  | RAC           |
| 30                 | Start fragment                       | Start data fragment of data session.   | DC            |

|    |                       |                                       |                          |
|----|-----------------------|---------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 31 | Continuation fragment | Middle data fragment of data session. | DC                       |
| 32 | End fragment          | Last data fragment of data session.   | DC                       |
| 34 | Padding byte          | Byte used for padding.                | BBSC, ASC, RAC, DSCH, DC |

## D 3.10. VDE-SAT MESSAGE DESCRIPTIONS

### D 3.10.1. SATELLITE BULLETIN BOARD

*Table 64 Satellite Bulletin Board (up to 6 fragments)*

| Field no | Value (Dec) | Size (Bytes) | Function             | Content   |
|----------|-------------|--------------|----------------------|---|
| 1        | 1           | 1            | Type                 | Bulletin Board start fragment 1, network info   |
| 2        |             | 1            | Satellite ID         | 0-255   |
| 3        |             | 1            | Primary Network ID   | 0-255   |
| 4        |             | 1            | Roaming Network ID   | 0-255   |
| 5        |             | 2            | SBB Version          | Version number of this Bulletin Board<br>All valid versions are stored in the ship terminal -   |
| 6        |             | 4            | Start time           | UTC start time for this version of the Bulletin Board in number of seconds since 1. January 2000 00:00:00 UTC   |
| 7        |             | 2            | Validity duration    | Lifetime of this version in number of 1 minute frames<br>Up to 45 days  |
| 8        | 0           | 1            | Network status       | 0: Operational<br>1: Reduced availability<br>2: Network down  |
| 9        | 1           | 1            | Service capabilities | 4 MSB Bitmap<br>2092 version compatibility<br>4 LSB service capabilities bitmap<br>Bit3: Reserved for future use. Default = 0.<br>Bit2: Reserved for future use. Default = 0. |

|    |  |   |  |   |
|----|--|---|--|---|
|    |  |   |  | Bit1: Reserved for future use. Default = 0.<br>Bit0: Reserved for future use. Default = 0; Set to 1 for Enhanced Random Access Supported. |
| 10 |  | 2 | SBB backup frequency                                   | As defined in ITU-R M.1084  |
| 11 |  | 2 | Max Uplink Msg Size                                    | Maximum message uplink size allowed in kilo Bytes [kB].   |
| 12 |  | 1 | SBB overflow LC  | Default 0.  |
| 13 |  | 2 | Total message size of all fragments including overflow | SBB total size in bytes   |

**Table 65 Satellite Bulletin Board (Fragment 2)**

| Field no | Value (Dec)                | Size (Bytes) | Function                      | Content  |
|----------|----------------------------|--------------|-------------------------------|--|
| 1        | 2                          | 1            | Type                          | Logical Channels 0-23 definition, frequency pairs A and B.   |
| 2        | As defined in ITU-R M.1084 | 2            | Downlink frequency A          | Channel number as defined in ITU-R M.1084<br>Default:<br>2226: 161.9125MHz (for 50kHz bandwidth)   |
| 3        | As defined in ITU-R M.1084 | 2            | Uplink frequency A            | Channel number as defined in ITU-R M.1084<br>Default:<br>1226: 157.3125 MHz (50kHz bandwidth)  |
| 4        |                            | 1            | Downlink and uplink bandwidth | First 4 bits defines downlink bandwidth.<br>1: 50 kHz (default)<br>2: 100 kHz<br>3: 150 kHz<br>Last 4 bits define uplink bandwidth<br>1: 50 kHz (default)<br>2: 100 kHz<br>3: 150 kHz  |
| 5        |                            | 6            | Logical channel slot sizes    | Up to 12 LCs on a frequency pair 1, multiple of 15 slots, 4 bits per LC (max size 15x15=225 slots)<br>Default SBB slot sizes. 90, 90, 30, 90, 90, 90, 90, 30, 30, 180, 0, 0. The slot sizes except SBB are repeated until frame is full (2250 slots) |
| 6        |                            | 6            | Logical Channel function      | 4 bits per LCs<br>0: BBSC<br>1: ASC<br>2: DSCH<br>3: RAC<br>4: DC, Data up or down (Dynamic, given in Resource Allocation message)   |

|    |                            |   |                               |  |
|----|----------------------------|---|-------------------------------|--|
|    |                            |   |                               | 5: Empty<br>Default: 0, 1, 4, 4, 4, 4, 4, 2, 3, 5, 5   |
| 7  | As defined in ITU-R M.1084 | 2 | Downlink frequency B          | Channel number as defined in ITU-R M.1084<br>Default:<br>1226: 157.3125 MHz (50kHz bandwidth)  |
| 8  | As defined in ITU-R M.1084 | 2 | Uplink frequency B            | Channel number as defined in ITU-R M.1084<br>Default:<br>2226: 161.9125 MHz (50kHz bandwidth)  |
| 9  |                            | 1 | Downlink and uplink bandwidth | First 4 bits defines downlink bandwidth.<br>1: 50 kHz (default)<br>2: 100 kHz<br>3: 150 kHz<br>Last 4 bits define uplink bandwidth<br>1: 50 kHz (default)<br>2: 100 kHz<br>3: 150 kHz  |
| 10 |                            | 6 | Logical channel slot sizes    | Up to 12 LCs on a frequency pair 1, multiple of 15 slots, 4 bits per LC (max size 15x15=225 slots)<br>Default SBB slot sizes. 90, 90, 30, 90, 90, 90, 90, 30, 30, 180, 0, 0. The slot sizes except SBB are repeated until frame is full (2250 slots) |
| 11 |                            | 6 | Logical Channel function      | 4 bits per LCs<br>Default: 0, 1, 4, 4, 4, 4, 4, 2, 3, 5, 5<br>See "SBB Fragment 2" for more details.   |

**Table 66 Satellite Bulletin Board (Fragment 3)**

| Field no | Value (Dec)                | Size (Bytes) | Function                      | Content  |
|----------|----------------------------|--------------|-------------------------------|--|
| 1        | 3                          | 1            | Type                          | Logical Channels 24-47 definition, frequency pairs C and D   |
| 2        | As defined in ITU-R M.1084 | 2            | Downlink frequency C          | Channel number as defined in ITU-R M.1084<br>Default:<br>2284: 161.8375 MHz (100kHz bandwidth)   |
| 3        | As defined in ITU-R M.1084 | 2            | Uplink frequency C            | Channel number as defined in ITU-R M.1084<br>Default:<br>1225: 157.2625 MHz (50kHz bandwidth)  |
| 4        |                            | 1            | Downlink and uplink bandwidth | First 4 bits defines downlink bandwidth.<br>2: 100 kHz (default)<br>Last 4 bits define uplink bandwidth<br>1: 50 kHz (default)<br>See "SBB Fragment 2" for more details. |

|    |                            |   |                               |  |
|----|----------------------------|---|-------------------------------|--|
| 5  |                            | 6 | Logical channel slot sizes    | Up to 12 LCs on a frequency pair 1, multiple of 15 slots, 4 bits per LC (max size 15x15=225 slots)<br><br>Default SBB slot sizes. 90, 90, 30, 90, 90, 90, 90, 30, 30, 180, 0, 0. The slot sizes except SBB are repeated until frame is full (2250 slots) |
| 6  |                            | 6 | Logical Channel function      | 4 bits per LCs<br><br>Default: 5, 5, 4, 4, 4, 4, 4, 2, 3, 5, 5<br><br>See “SBB Fragment 2” for more details.   |
| 7  | As defined in ITU-R M.1084 | 2 | Downlink frequency D          | Channel number as defined in ITU-R M.1084<br><br>Default:<br><br>1284: 157.2375 MHz (100kHz bandwidth)   |
| 8  | As defined in ITU-R M.1084 | 2 | Uplink frequency D            | Channel number as defined in ITU-R M.1084<br><br>Default:<br><br>2225: 161.8625 MHz (50kHz bandwidth)  |
| 9  |                            | 1 | Downlink and uplink bandwidth | First 4 bits defines downlink bandwidth.<br><br>2: 100 kHz (default)<br><br>Last 4 bits define uplink bandwidth<br><br>1: 50 kHz (default)   |
| 10 |                            | 6 | Logical channel slot sizes    | Up to 12 LCs on a frequency pair 1, multiple of 15 slots, 4 bits per LC (max size 15x15=225 slots)<br><br>Default SBB slot sizes. 90, 90, 30, 90, 90, 90, 90, 30, 30, 180, 0, 0. The slot sizes except SBB are repeated until frame is full (2250 slots) |
| 11 |                            | 6 | Logical Channel function      | 4 bits per LCs<br><br>Default: 5, 5, 4, 4, 4, 4, 4, 2, 3, 5, 5<br><br>See “SBB Fragment 2” for more details.   |

**Table 67 Satellite Bulletin Board (Fragment 4)**

| Field no | Value (Dec)                | Size (Bytes) | Function                      | Content  |
|----------|----------------------------|--------------|-------------------------------|--|
| 1        | 4                          | 1            | Type                          | Logical Channels 48-71 definition, frequency pairs E and F   |
| 2        | As defined in ITU-R M.1084 | 2            | Downlink frequency E          | Channel number as defined in ITU-R M.1084<br><br>Default:<br><br>2225: 161.8625 MHz (150kHz bandwidth)   |
| 3        | As defined in ITU-R M.1084 | 2            | Uplink frequency E            | Channel number as defined in ITU-R M.1084<br><br>Default:<br><br>1224: 157.2125 MHz (50kHz bandwidth)  |
| 4        |                            | 1            | Downlink and uplink bandwidth | First 4 bits defines downlink bandwidth.<br><br>3: 150 kHz (default)<br><br>Last 4 bits define uplink bandwidth<br><br>1: 50 kHz (default)<br><br>See “SBB Fragment 2” for more details. |



|    |                            |   |                               |   |
|----|----------------------------|---|-------------------------------|---|
| 5  |                            | 6 | Logical channel slot sizes    | Up to 12 LCs on a frequency pair 1, multiple of 15 slots, 4 bits per LC (max size 15x15=225 slots)<br><br>Default SBB slot sizes. 90, 90, 30, 90, 90, 90, 90, 30, 30, 180, 0, 0.<br><br>The slot sizes except SBB are repeated until frame is full (2250 slots) |
| 6  |                            | 6 | Logical Channel function      | 4 bits per LCs<br><br>Default: 5, 5, 4, 4, 4, 4, 4, 2, 3, 5, 5<br><br>See “SBB Fragment 2” for more details.  |
| 7  | As defined in ITU-R M.1084 | 2 | Downlink frequency F          | Channel number as defined in ITU-R M.1084<br><br>Default:<br>1225: 157.2625 MHz (150kHz bandwidth)  |
| 8  | As defined in ITU-R M.1084 | 2 | Uplink frequency F            | Channel number as defined in ITU-R M.1084<br><br>Default:<br>2224: 161.8125 MHz (50kHz bandwidth)   |
| 9  |                            | 1 | Downlink and uplink bandwidth | First 4 bits defines downlink bandwidth.<br>3: 150 kHz (default)<br><br>Last 4 bits define uplink bandwidth<br>1: 50 kHz (default)<br><br>See “SBB Fragment 2” for more details.  |
| 10 |                            | 6 | Logical Channel slot sizes    | Up to 12 LCs on a frequency pair 1, multiple of 15 slots, 4 bits per LC (max size 15x15=225 slots)<br><br>Default SBB slot sizes. 90, 90, 30, 90, 90, 90, 90, 30, 30, 180, 0, 0.<br><br>The slot sizes except SBB are repeated until frame is full (2250 slots) |
| 11 |                            | 6 | Logical Channel function      | 4 bits per LC<br><br>Default: 5, 5, 4, 4, 4, 4, 4, 2, 3, 5, 5<br><br>See “SBB Fragment 2” for more details.   |

**Table 68 Satellite Bulletin Board (Fragment 5)**

| Field no | Value (Dec) | Size (Bytes) | Function                 | Content                        |
|----------|-------------|--------------|--------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1        | 5           | 1            | Type                     | SBB Digital Signature part 1.  |
| 2        |             | 32           | Digital signature part 1 | Refer Annex C, Section C 4.15. |

**Table 69 Satellite Bulletin Board (Fragment 6)**

| Field no | Value (Dec) | Size (Bytes) | Function | Content                       |
|----------|-------------|--------------|----------|-------------------------------|
| 1        | 6           | 1            | Type     | SBB Digital Signature part 2. |

|   |  |    |                          |                                |
|---|--|----|--------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 2 |  | 32 | Digital signature part 2 | Refer Annex C, Section C 4.15. |
|---|--|----|--------------------------|--------------------------------|

### D 3.10.2. MEDIA ACCESS CONTROL

**Table 70 Media Access Control**

| Field no | Value (Dec) | Size (Bytes) | Function                               | Content   |
|----------|-------------|--------------|--|---|
| 1        | 10          | 1            | Type                                   |   |
| 2        | 10          | 2            | Payload size                           | Fixed of fields 3 to 11.  |
| 3        |             | 1            | Satellite ID                           | 0-255   |
| 4        |             | 1            | Primary Network ID                     | 0-255   |
| 5        |             | 1            | Roaming Network ID                     | 0-255   |
| 6        | 0           | 1            | Media Access Priority                  | 0: All accesses allowed<br>1: All accesses except Short Data Message Allowed<br>2: Only Resource Request/Response allowed<br>255: No accesses allowed; system busy  |
| 7        | 12          | 1            | Random selection interval              | In multiple of 15 slots<br>Default set to 12 (12 x 15 = 180 slots)<br>The ship terminal generates a uniformly distributed random number between 0 and this number. This number multiplied by 15 determines RAC slot number, and is rounded up to next slot on a grid given by the Link ID. For the default Link ID 20, the RAC transmissions starts on a 5 slot grid. |
| 8        | 3           | 1            | Short Uplink Data Message access limit | Maximum number of short messages allowed during a 15 minute interval.<br>Default: 2   |
| 9        | 0           | 1            | Network status                         | 0: Operational<br>1: Reduced availability<br>2: Network down  |
| 10       | 3           | 1            | ARQ/timeout limits                     | 4 MSB Number of fragment retries<br>Default: 3 retries for a fragment.<br><br>4 LSB: Timeout timer setting<br>Reserved for future use. Default = 0.   |
| 11       |             | 2            | Bulletin Version number                | Maps to SBB version number.   |

### D 3.10.3. PAGING

**Table 71 Paging**

| Field no | Value (Dec) | Size (Bytes) | Function          | Content  |
|----------|-------------|--------------|-------------------|--|
| 1        | 11          | 1            | Type              |  |
| 2        | 32          | 2            | Payload size      | Size of fields 3 to 10.  |
| 3        |             | 4            | Ship 1 Station ID | The Unique Identifier of the receiving station, as described in section 3.4.                         |
| 4        |             | 4            | Ship 2 Station ID | The Unique Identifier of the receiving station, as described in section 3.4.<br>Set to 0 when empty. |
| 5        |             | 4            | Ship 3 Station ID | The Unique Identifier of the receiving station, as described in section 3.4.<br>Set to 0 when empty. |
| 6        |             | 4            | Ship 4 Station ID | The Unique Identifier of the receiving station, as described in section 3.4.<br>Set to 0 when empty. |
| 7        |             | 4            | Ship 5 Station ID | The Unique Identifier of the receiving station, as described in section 3.4.<br>Set to 0 when empty. |
| 8        |             | 4            | Ship 6 Station ID | The Unique Identifier of the receiving station, as described in section 3.4.<br>Set to 0 when empty. |
| 9        |             | 4            | Ship 7 Station ID | The Unique Identifier of the receiving station, as described in section 3.4.<br>Set to 0 when empty. |
| 10       |             | 4            | Ship 8 Station ID | The Unique Identifier of the receiving station, as described in section 3.4.<br>Set to 0 when empty. |

#### D 3.10.4. PAGING RESPONSE

**Table 72 Paging Response**

| Field no | Value (Dec) | Size (Bytes) | Function              | Content   |
|----------|-------------|--------------|-----------------------|---|
| 1        | 21          | 1            | Type                  |   |
| 2        |             | 4            | Ship Station ID       | The Unique Identifier of station where the message originated from, as described in section 3.4   |
| 3        |             | 1            | Terminal capabilities | Bitmask:<br>4 MSB: Set for versions of 2092<br>4 LSB:<br>Bit 3: Reserved for future use. Default = 0.<br>Bit 2: Reserved for future use. Default = 0.<br>Bit 1: Reserved for future use. Default = 0.<br>Bit 0: Set to 1 for low-power terminal < 2W. |
| 4        |             | 1            | Downlink ASC CQI      |   |

#### D 3.10.5. RESOURCE REQUEST

**Table 73 Resource Request**

| Field no | Value (Dec) | Size (Bytes) | Function              | Content   |
|----------|-------------|--------------|-----------------------|---|
| 1        | 20          | 1            | Type                  |   |
| 2        |             | 4            | Ship Station ID       | The Unique Identifier of station where the message originated from, as described in section 3.4 |
| 3        |             | 1            | Satellite ID          | Destination satellite ID.   |
| 4        | 0           | 1            | Priority              | 0: Normal<br>255: Pan-pan   |
| 5        | 1           | 1            | Terminal capabilities | See field 3 in Paging Response Message.   |
| 6        |             | 1            | Downlink ASC CQI      |   |
| 7        |             | 1            | TBD                   | Set to 0. Reserved for future use.  |

Note:

The message will be transmitted on the RAC by ships during a resource request.

#### D 3.10.6. RESOURCE ALLOCATION

**Table 74 Resource Allocation**

| Field no | Value (Dec) | Size (Bytes) | Function          | Content  |
|----------|-------------|--------------|-------------------|--|
| 1        | 12          | 1            | Type              |  |
| 2        | 32          | 2            | Payload size      | Size of fields 3 to 22.  |
| 3        |             | 4            | Ship Station ID   | The Unique Identifier of the ship station, as described in section 3.4<br>0 for broadcast.                   |
| 4        |             | 1            | Logical Channel 1 | Logical Channel assigned for data transmission. Only applies to data slots. LC of 255 indicates no resource. |
| 5        |             | 1            | Link ID 1         | Link ID that must be used in Logical Channel 1. Transmission direction can be inferred from link ID.         |
| 6        |             | 1            | Session ID 1      | Satellite assigned session ID, range 1-255.<br>0 used for short message                                      |
| 7        |             | 1            | Uplink link CQI 1 | Reception Link ID that must be used in Logical Channel Rx.   |
| 8        |             | 4            | Ship Station ID 2 | The Unique Identifier of the ship station, as described in section 3.4<br>0 for broadcast.                   |
| 9        |             | 1            | Logical Channel 2 | Logical Channel assigned for data transmission. Only applies to data slots. LC of 255 indicates no resource. |
| 10       |             | 1            | Link ID 2         | Link ID that must be used in Logical Channel 2. Transmission direction can be inferred from link ID.         |
| 11       |             | 1            | Session ID 2      | Assigned session ID.   |
| 12       |             | 1            | Uplink link CQI 2 | Reception Link ID that must be used in Logical Channel Rx.   |
| 13       |             | 4            | Ship Station ID 3 | The Unique Identifier of the ship station, as described in section 3.4<br>0 for broadcast.                   |

|    |  |   |                   |  |
|----|--|---|-------------------|--|
| 14 |  | 1 | Logical Channel 3 | Logical Channel assigned for data transmission. Only applies to data slots. LC of 255 indicates no resource. |
| 15 |  | 1 | Link ID 3         | Link ID that must be used in Logical Channel 3. Transmission direction can be inferred from link ID.         |
| 16 |  | 1 | Session ID 3      | Assigned session ID.   |
| 17 |  | 1 | Uplink link CQI 3 | Reception Link ID that must be used in Logical Channel Rx.   |
| 18 |  | 4 | Ship Station ID 4 | The Unique Identifier of the ship station, as described in section 3.4<br>0 for broadcast.                   |
| 19 |  | 1 | Logical Channel 4 | Logical Channel assigned for data transmission. Only applies to data slots. LC of 255 indicates no resource. |
| 20 |  | 1 | Link ID 4         | Link ID that must be used in Logical Channel 4. Transmission direction can be inferred from link ID.         |
| 21 |  | 1 | Session ID 4      | Assigned session ID.   |
| 22 |  | 1 | Uplink link CQI 4 | Reception Link ID that must be used in Logical Channel Rx.   |

### D 3.10.7. START FRAGMENT

The last fragment defines end of a message, thus message length is not needed in the Start Fragment Message for the given session.

**Table 75 Start Fragment**

| Field no | Value (Dec) | Size (Bytes) | Function        | Content   |
|----------|-------------|--------------|-----------------|---|
| 1        | 30          | 1            | Type            |   |
| 2        |             | 2            | Payload size    | Size of fields 3 to 7.  |
| 3        |             | 4            | Ship Station ID | The Unique Identifier of the ship station, as described in section 3.4.   |
| 4        |             | 1            | Satellite ID    | Satellite ID.   |
| 5        |             | 1            | Session ID      | 1-255   |
| 6        |             | 2            | Fragment number | Fragment number of the payload in this message. First fragment must start at 0, increment with any additional fragment and wrap at 65535. |
| 7        |             | Variable     | Payload         |   |

Note:

The data transfer direction can be inferred from the used Link ID.

### D 3.10.8. CONTINUATION FRAGMENT

**Table 76 Continuation Fragment**

| Field no | Value (Dec) | Size (Bytes) | Function        | Content   |
|----------|-------------|--------------|-----------------|---|
| 1        | 31          | 1            | Type            |   |
| 2        |             | 2            | Payload size    | Size of fields 3 to 7.  |
| 3        |             | 4            | Ship Station ID | The Unique Identifier of the ship station, as described in section 3.4. |
| 4        |             | 1            | Satellite ID    | Satellite ID.   |

|   |  |          |                 |   |
|---|--|----------|-----------------|---|
| 5 |  | 1        | Session ID      | 1-255   |
| 6 |  | 2        | Fragment number | Fragment number of the payload in this message. First fragment must start at 0, increment with any additional fragment and wrap at 65535. |
| 7 |  | Variable | Payload         |   |

### D 3.10.9. END FRAGMENT

**Table 77 End Fragment**

| Field no | Value (Dec) | Size (Bytes) | Function        | Content   |
|----------|-------------|--------------|-----------------|---|
| 1        | 32          | 1            | Type            |   |
| 2        |             | 2            | Payload size    | Size of fields 3 to 7.  |
| 3        |             | 4            | Ship Station ID | The Unique Identifier of the ship station, as described in section 3.4.   |
| 4        |             | 1            | Satellite ID    | Satellite ID.   |
| 5        |             | 1            | Session ID      | 1-255   |
| 6        |             | 2            | Fragment number | Fragment number of the payload in this message. First fragment must start at 0, increment with any additional fragment and wrap at 65535. |
| 7        |             | Variable     | Payload         |   |

### D 3.10.10. END DELIVERY NOTIFICATION TO SHIP

**Table 78 End Delivery Notification to ship**

| Field no | Value (Dec) | Size (Bytes) | Function          | Content   |
|----------|-------------|--------------|-------------------|---|
| 1        | 18          | 1            | Type              |   |
| 2        | 5-30        | 2            | Payload size      | Size of fields 3 to 14.   |
| 3        |             | 4            | Ship 1 Station ID | The Unique Identifier of the ship station, as described in section 3.4.                         |
| 4        |             | 1            | Session ID ship 1 | Set to 0 for short uplink messages.   |
| 5        |             | 4            | Ship 2 Station ID | The Unique Identifier of the ship station, as described in section 3.4.<br>Set to 0 when empty. |
| 6        |             | 1            | Session ID ship 2 | Set to 0 for short uplink messages.   |
| 7        |             | 4            | Ship 3 Station ID | The Unique Identifier of the ship station, as described in section 3.4.<br>Set to 0 when empty. |
| 8        |             | 1            | Session ID ship 3 | Set to 0 for short uplink messages.   |
| 9        |             | 4            | Ship 4 Station ID | The Unique Identifier of the ship station, as described in section 3.4.<br>Set to 0 when empty. |
| 10       |             | 1            | Session ID ship 4 | Set to 0 for short uplink messages.   |

|    |  |   |                   |   |
|----|--|---|-------------------|---|
| 11 |  | 4 | Ship 5 Station ID | The Unique Identifier of the ship station, as described in section 3.4.<br>Set to 0 when empty. |
| 12 |  | 1 | Session ID ship 5 | Set to 0 for short uplink messages.   |
| 13 |  | 4 | Ship 6 Station ID | The Unique Identifier of the ship station, as described in section 3.4.<br>Set to 0 when empty. |
| 14 |  | 1 | Session ID ship 6 | Set to 0 for short uplink messages.   |

#### D 3.10.11. END DELIVERY NOTIFICATION FROM SHIP

**Table 79 End Delivery Notification from ship**

| Field no | Value (Dec) | Size (Bytes) | Function               | Content  |
|----------|-------------|--------------|------------------------|--|
| 1        | 22          | 1            | Type                   |  |
| 2        |             | 4            | Ship Station ID        | The Unique Identifier of the ship station, as described in section 3.4.        |
| 3        |             | 4            | Destination Station ID | The Unique Identifier of the destination station, as described in section 3.4. |
| 4        |             | 1            | Session ID             | Set to 0 for Short Message ACK.  |

This message may be used by the application on a vessel to confirm reception a downlink message.

#### D 3.10.12. DOWNLINK ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

**Table 80 Downlink Acknowledgement**

| Field no | Value (Dec) | Size (Bytes) | Function     | Content  |
|----------|-------------|--------------|--------------|--|
| 1        | 29          | 1            | Type         |  |
| 2        |             | 1            | Satellite ID |  |
| 3        |             | 1            | Downlink CQI |  |
| 4        |             | 7            | NACK mask    | Lost fragments/packets set to 1. All fields are set to 0 for short messages.<br><br>Oldest packet is LSB |

Note:

Used for the uplink ACK of downlink data and short messages.

#### D 3.10.13. UPLINK ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

**Table 81 Uplink Acknowledgement**

| Field no | Value (Dec) | Size (Bytes) | Function     | Content                |
|----------|-------------|--------------|--------------|------------------------|
| 1        | 13          | 1            | Type         |                        |
| 2        | 32          | 2            | Payload size | Size of fields 3 to 8. |

|   |  |    |  |   |
|---|--|----|--|---|
| 3 |  | 4  | Source Station ID                      | The Unique Identifier of the ship station, as described in section 3.4.   |
| 4 |  | 1  | Session ID                             | 1-255   |
| 5 |  | 1  | Resource re-allocation                 | Number of future packets the Logical Channel may be used for.   |
| 6 |  | 1  | Uplink CQI                             |   |
| 7 |  | 1  | Adaptive Coding and Modulation Control | 4 MSB<br>0: Maintain Link ID<br>1: Select Link ID with next higher CQI<br>2: Select Link ID with next lower CQI<br>4 LSB<br>0: Use default power level for current Link ID<br>1: Reduce Power level 10 dB<br>2: Reduce power level 3 dB<br>3: Increase power level 3 dB |
| 8 |  | 24 | NACK mask                              | Lost fragments/packets set to 1.<br>Oldest packet is LSB  |

Note:

Used for the downlink ACK of uplink data.

#### D 3.10.14. DOWNLINK SHORT MESSAGE (WITH ACK)

**Table 82 Downlink Short Message (with Ack)**

| Field no | Value (Dec) | Size (Bytes) | Function        | Content  |
|----------|-------------|--------------|-----------------|--|
| 1        | 14          | 1            | Type            |  |
| 2        |             | 2            | Payload size    | Size of fields 3 to 6.   |
| 3        |             | 4            | Source ID       |  |
| 4        |             | 4            | Ship Station ID | The Unique Identifier of the destination station, as described in section 3.4. |
| 5        |             | Variable     | Payload         | Binary data.   |

#### D 3.10.15. DOWNLINK SHORT MESSAGE (WITHOUT ACK)

**Table 83 Downlink Short Message (without Ack)**

| Field no | Value (Dec) | Size (Bytes) | Function     | Content                |
|----------|-------------|--------------|--------------|------------------------|
| 1        | 16          | 1            | Type         |                        |
| 2        |             | 2            | Payload size | Size of fields 3 to 6. |
| 3        |             | 4            | Source ID    |                        |



|   |  |          |                 |  |
|---|--|----------|-----------------|--|
| 4 |  | 4        | Ship Station ID | The Unique Identifier of the destination station, as described in section 3.4. |
| 5 |  | Variable | Payload         | Binary data.   |

#### D 3.10.16. UPLINK SHORT MESSAGE (WITH ACK)

***Table 84 Uplink Short Message (with Ack)***

| Field no | Value (Dec) | Size (Bytes) | Function               | Content  |
|----------|-------------|--------------|------------------------|--|
| 1        | 33          | 1            | Type                   |  |
| 2        |             | 4            | Ship Station ID        | The Unique Identifier of the source station, as described in section 3.4.      |
| 3        |             | 4            | Destination Station ID | The Unique Identifier of the destination station, as described in section 3.4. |
| 4        |             | 1            | Data                   | Binary data  |

#### D 3.10.17. UPLINK SHORT MESSAGE (WITHOUT ACK)

***Table 85 Uplink Short Message (without Ack)***

| Field no | Value (Dec) | Size (Bytes) | Function               | Content  |
|----------|-------------|--------------|------------------------|--|
| 1        | 23          | 1            | Type                   |  |
| 2        |             | 4            | Ship Station ID        | The Unique Identifier of the source station, as described in section 3.4.      |
| 3        |             | 4            | Destination Station ID | The Unique Identifier of the destination station, as described in section 3.4. |
| 4        |             | 1            | Data                   | Binary data.   |

#### D 3.10.18. UPLINK SHORT MESSAGE (WITHOUT ACK)

***Table 86 Uplink Short Message (without Ack)***

| Field no | Value (Dec) | Size (Bytes) | Function        | Content   |
|----------|-------------|--------------|-----------------|---|
| 1        | 24-28       | 1            | Type            |   |
| 2        |             | 4            | Ship Station ID | The Unique Identifier of the source station, as described in section 3.4. |
| 3        |             | 5            | Data            | Binary data.  |

### D 3.11. RETRY MECHANISM

During data transmission, it is expected that data fragments can be lost occasionally. When some data fragments are not received, the receiving station shall transmit an ACK/NACK message (#13/#29) and flag the lost fragment slots in the ACK/NACK mask parameter.

The transmitting station shall retry transmission of each individual fragment for a maximum of N consecutive data channels before giving up, excluding the original fragment transmission in a data channel.

The receiving station shall request retransmission of data fragments for a maximum of N attempts. N is given in the MAC message field 10.

It is also possible that the ACK/NACK message (#13/#29) is not received by the transmitting station. It is for this reason that the NACK message (#13/#29) contains redundancy for three ACK/NACK masks, referencing the previous three data channels.

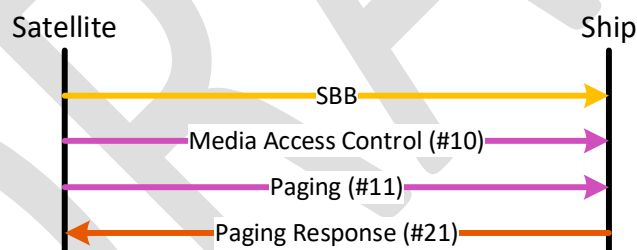
When the transmitting station does not receive an ACK/NACK message, it shall continue as if all the fragments have been acknowledged. If there were any errors, then the transmitting station will see this when it receives the next ACK/NACK message. If no ACK/NACK message is received within N data acknowledgement signalling channels, then the transmitter shall stop transmitting immediately.

## D 3.12. DATA TRANSFER PROTOCOL DETAILS

### D 3.12.1. PAGING

#### Paging

- Satellite Bulletin Board Signalling Channel
- Announcement Signalling Channel
- Data Acknowledgement Signalling Channel
- Random Access Channel
- Data Channel

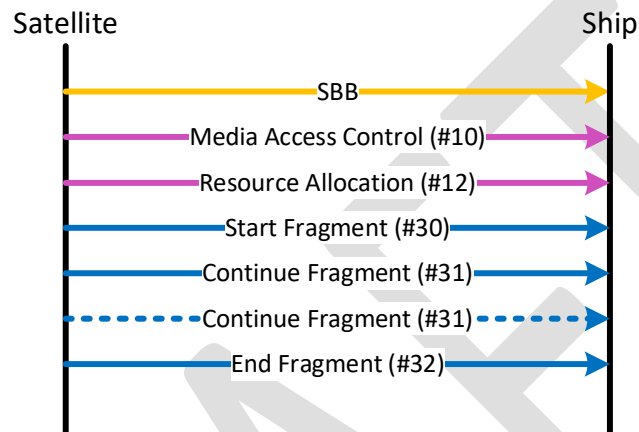


**Figure 56. Paging**

### D 3.12.2. SATELLITE ORIGINATED BROADCAST

## Satellite Originated Broadcast

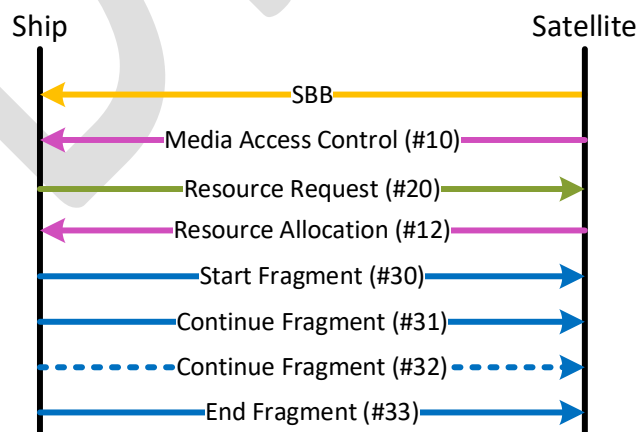
- Satellite Bulletin Board Signalling Channel
- Announcement Signalling Channel
- Data Acknowledgement Signalling Channel
- Random Access Channel
- Data Channel



**Figure 57 Satellite originated broadcast**

### D 3.12.3. SHIP TRANSMISSION WITHOUT ACK

- Satellite Bulletin Board Signalling Channel
- Announcement Signalling Channel
- Data Acknowledgement Signalling Channel
- Random Access Channel
- Data Channel

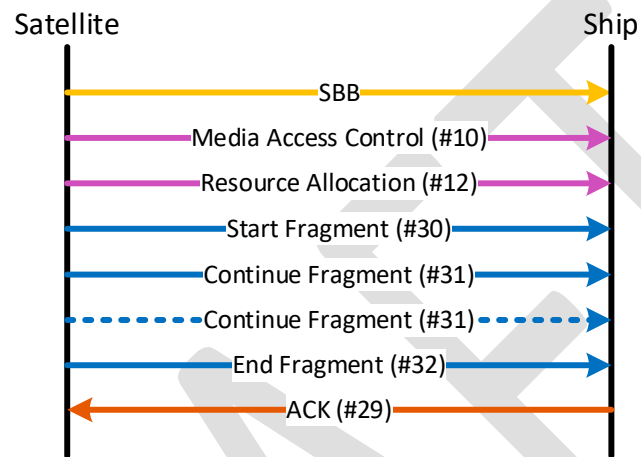


**Figure 58 Ship transmission without ACK**

### D 3.12.4. SATELLITE TO SHIP ADDRESSED MESSAGE

## Satellite to Ship Addressed Message

- Satellite Bulletin Board Signalling Channel
- Announcement Signalling Channel
- Data Acknowledgement Signalling Channel
- Random Access Channel
- Data Channel

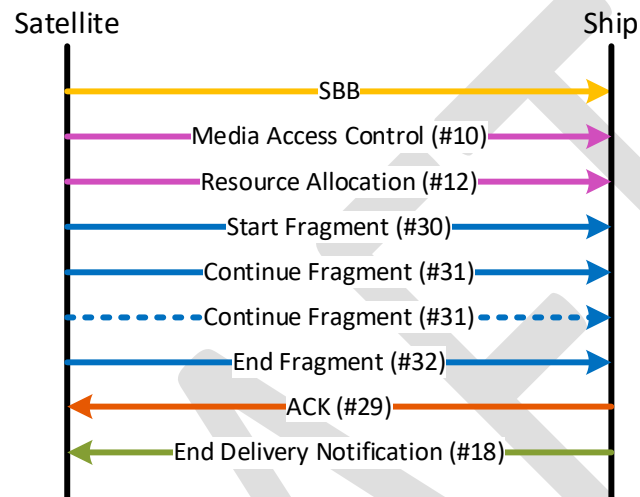


*Figure 59 Satellite to ship addressed message*

### D 3.12.5. SATELLITE TO SHIP ADDRESSED MESSAGE WITH EDN

## Satellite to Ship Addressed Message with EDN

- Satellite Bulletin Board Signalling Channel
- Announcement Signalling Channel
- Data Acknowledgement Signalling Channel
- Random Access Channel
- Data Channel

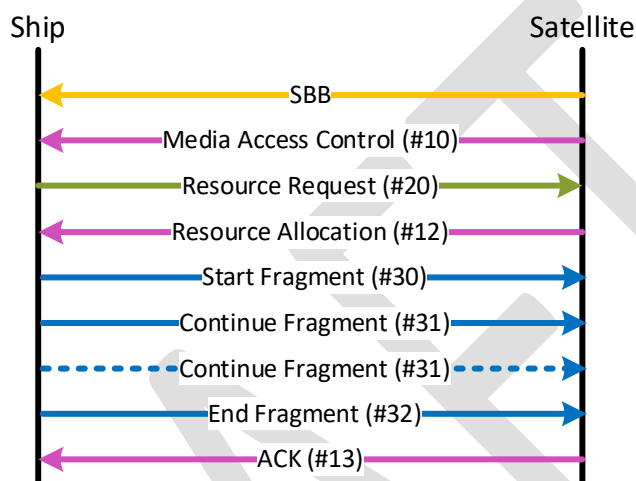


**Figure 60 Satellite to ship addressed message with EDN**

### D 3.12.6. SHIP TO SATELLITE ADDRESSED MESSAGE

## Ship to Satellite Addressed Message

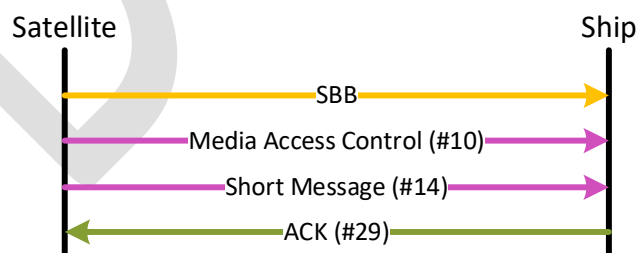
- Satellite Bulletin Board Signalling Channel
- Announcement Signalling Channel
- Data Acknowledgement Signalling Channel
- Random Access Channel
- Data Channel



**Figure 61 Ship to satellite addressed message**

### D 3.12.7. SATELLITE TO SHIP SHORT DATA MESSAGE (WITH ACK)

- Satellite Bulletin Board Signalling Channel
- Announcement Signalling Channel
- Data Acknowledgement Signalling Channel
- Random Access Channel
- Data Channel

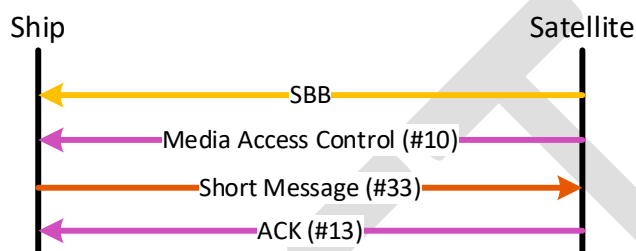


**Figure 62 Satellite to ship short data message (with Ack)**

### D 3.12.8. SHIP TO SATELLITE SHORT DATA MESSAGE (WITH ACK)

### Ship to Satellite Short Data Message (with Ack)

- Satellite Bulletin Board Signalling Channel
- Announcement Signalling Channel
- Data Acknowledgement Signalling Channel
- Random Access Channel
- Data Channel

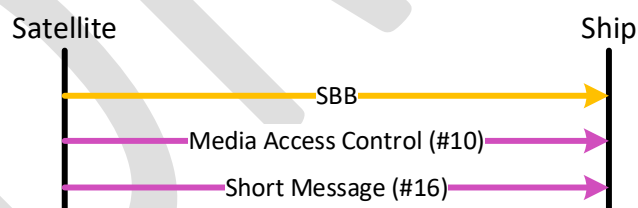


**Figure 63 Ship to satellite short data message (with Ack)**

### D 3.12.9. SATELLITE TO SHIP SHORT DATA MESSAGE (NO ACK)

#### Satellite to Ship Short Data Message (no Ack)

- Satellite Bulletin Board Signalling Channel
- Announcement Signalling Channel
- Data Acknowledgement Signalling Channel
- Random Access Channel
- Data Channel

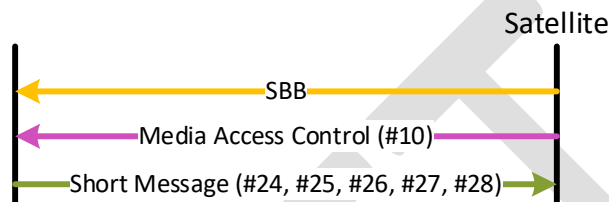


**Figure 64 Satellite to ship short data message (no Ack)**

### D 3.12.10. SHIP TO SATELLITE SHORT DATA MESSAGE (NO ACK)

## Ship to Satellite Short Data Message (no Ack)

- Satellite Bulletin Board Signalling Channel
- Announcement Signalling Channel
- Data Acknowledgement Signalling Channel
- Random Access Channel
- Data Channel



**Figure 65 Ship to satellite short data message (no Ack)**

### D 3.13. RANDOM ACCESS

A ship accesses the system by requesting a resource or sending a short data message on the random access channel.

When a message is scheduled for immediate RAC transmission, then all transmission candidate slots must be gathered over the selection interval. The default selection interval is 180 slots (minus 1 last guard slot), but may be set via a Media Access Control message, received from a Satellite. Only slots with slot function set as RAC may be considered as candidate slots. As an AIS transceiver forms part of the VDES system, the AIS transmission schedules must also be considered. AIS will always have priority over VDE-SAT transmissions.

One candidate slot will be randomly selected from all the available candidate slots. If no candidate slot is available or if for some reason, the VDE message could not be transmitted (AIS messages could be scheduled after the VDE-SAT schedule), then the VDE transmission will fail and the normal retry mechanism will follow. The retry mechanism will allow up to 3 retries of the RAC transmission.

### D 3.14. LOGICAL CHANNEL ASSIGNMENT

For data transfers two Logical Data Channel are assigned until the transfer is complete, has timed out (fragment loss) or is terminated by the satellite for other reasons (e.g. priority or capacity limits).

## D 4 NETWORK LAYER

See Annex C 5.

## D 5 TRANSPORT LAYER

See Annex C 6.

## D 6 SESSION LAYER





See Annex C 7.

## **D 7 PRESENTATION LAYER**

---

See Annex C 8.

DRAFT

## **ANNEX E    RESOURCE SHARING METHOD FOR VDES TERRESTRIAL AND SATELLITE SERVICES**

### **E 1    INTRODUCTION**

This annex describes how resource sharing (i.e. in time and frequency) for utilizing the VHF spectrum available between different VDES services and stations should be accomplished.

A ship may be within range of multiple controlling shore stations. This annex describes a method for coordinating time and frequency resources between multiple controlling shore stations, particularly the use of bulletin boards and announcement signalling channels, as defined in Annex C and D.

The VDE-SAT is an effective means to extend the VDES to areas outside of coastal VHF coverage. However, due to the large footprint of satellite, the VDE-SAT downlink signal may interfere with VDE-TER in the coastal areas when satellite is in visibility. Similarly, the terrestrial ship-to-shore VDE signals can interfere with the satellite reception of VDE-SAT uplink when a VDE Satellite is in the field of view. The method described in this annex for resource sharing is derived based on the characteristics of VDE-TER and VDE-SAT, particularly the use of bulletin board and announcement signalling channels, as defined in Annex C and D.

### **E 2    VDES RESOURCE SHARING PRINCIPLES**

#### **E 2.1    AIS PRIORITY**

Care must be taken to respect the AIS transmission and reception as the highest priority.

#### **E 2.2    COORDINATION BETWEEN ASM AND VDE**

VDE ship transmissions should be coordinated with transmissions on the ASM channels to ensure that ASM messages with new safety and navigational related information can be received.

#### **E 2.3    SHORE STATION VDES CONTROL AREA**

The VDES resource assignments in the proximity of a shore station is monitored and controlled by a shore station. Shore stations utilize terrestrial bulletin board (TBB) to coordinate the resource assignment within the control area.

There are dedicated slots and frequency bands for TBB that are reserved to communicate the required information to each vessel in the control area of a shore station.

### **E 3    VDE-TER RESOURCE SHARING BETWEEN MULTIPLE CONTROLLING SHORE STATIONS**

The allocation of frequency and time slots used for the bulletin board announcement must be coordinated between controlling stations. Other resource assignments are managed based on the content of the bulletin board and announcement signalling channels. The assignment may change dynamically (according to temporal demands).

There are dedicated resources that are assigned to the terrestrial bulletin board and announcement channels, as described in Annex C and D.

Channels 2024, 2084, 2025 and 2085 are shared between multiple controlling stations. The resource sharing must be coordinated between shore station operators. This coordination can be done either directly between the operators or rely on the bulletin board and announcement channels of the shore stations, depending on the

shore control areas, the resource assignment may vary. As an initial configuration for resource sharing, the controlling shore stations should adopt a static assignment in time and frequency.

## **E 4 VDE-TER AND VDE-SAT RESOURCE SHARING**

Shore stations utilize the terrestrial bulletin board (TBB), as described in Annex C, to coordinate the resource assignment within the control area. Shore stations may provide information regarding VDE-SAT communications and availability as part of their information service. There are dedicated time slots and frequency bands for TBB that are reserved to communicate the required information to each vessel in the control area of a shore station. The frequency bands and time slots that are assigned to the TBB should not be used for VDE-SAT communications.

Each satellite shall use satellite bulletin board SBB, as defined in Annex D, to communicate the VDE-SAT resource assignments, both for downlink and uplink, to vessels in the coverage area. There are dedicated slots and frequency bands for the SBB that are reserved to communicate the required information to each vessel in the field of view of a satellite.

Within the service area of a VDE-TER shore station the resource assignments provided in the TBB from that VDE-TER shore station shall be respected and given priority over the resource assignments provided in the SBB from a VDE-SAT satellite. When VDE-SAT uplink transmissions occurs, care must be taken to respect the VDE-TER transmission and reception as the higher priority.

The channels 1026, 1086, 2026 and 2086 are identified to VDE-SAT communications, and are managed by the SBB. These channels are not used for VDE-TER communications. Therefore, on these channels no resources are shared between VDE-TER and VDE-SAT and no sharing scheme is required.

The channels 1024, 1084, 1025, 1085, 2024, 2084, 2025 and 2085 are identified for VDE-TER and VDE-SAT communications. With respect to ship stations within VDE-TER shore station coverage, the use of these channels should not cause harmful interference to VDE-TER operation, as described in section 3.1.

For areas not controlled by a VDE-TER shore station, VDE-TER ship-to-ship communications should be according to the default TBB. VDE-SAT communications on the channels 1024, 1084, 1025, 1085, 2024, 2084, 2025 and 2085 is managed by the SBB, and should not cause harmful interference to VDE-TER operation, as described in section 3.1.

## **E 5 SHARING BETWEEN DIFFERENT VDE SATELLITE SYSTEMS**

The sharing between two or more satellite systems is coordinated between the satellite operators and organized through the bulletin board, delivered by satellites in VDE-SAT downlink bands, as described in Annexes A and D. Ships use the satellite bulletin boards for channel and resource configuration.

The waveform used for the bulletin board should allow for detection of overlapping signals received from multiple satellites. The use of direct sequence spreading as defined in Annex D, allows for detection of up to 4 overlapping satellite signals, depending on SAT-MCS.